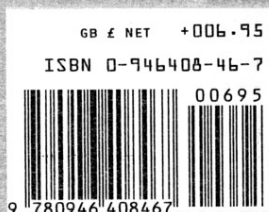


David Lawrence shows how the full power of the QL can be released in SuperBASIC. The QL introduces a new generation of high-powered home computers. With it is a need for a new approach to programming.

The areas covered by the programs in this book include home finance and tax, information storage and retrieval, household and diary management, creative graphics and effective display techniques, music, education and a collection of smaller programs which all perform useful functions but mostly show off the QL's immense abilities.

All the programs in this book are clearly explained and written in easily identifiable modules. The same techniques can be copied into your own programs. We also use the unique Sunshine Checksum Generator. This analyses your programs and ensures that errors can be avoided in entering them. This can save you hours of frustration.

David Lawrence is one of the most successful and popular computer authors. His books, for a wide range of home micros, have been best-sellers all over the world. He now divides his time between writing for micro owners and broadcasting. He is a regular contributor to Popular Computing Weekly.



£6.95 net

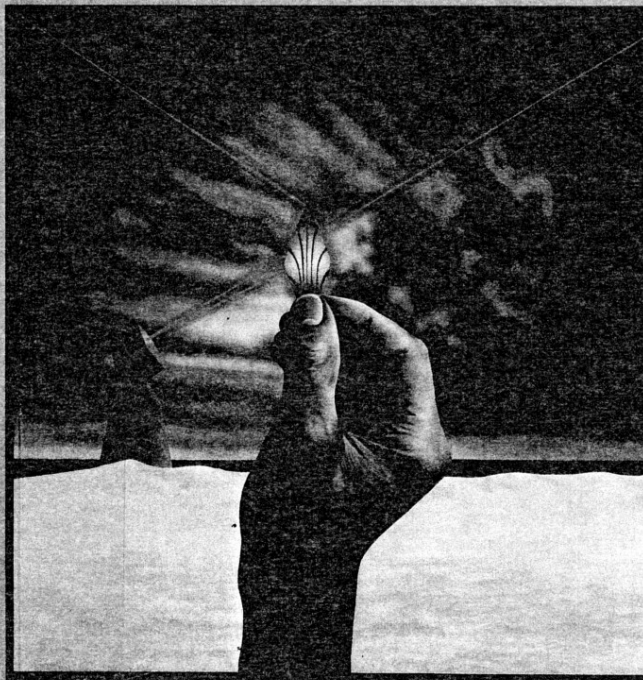


The Working Sinclair QL

A library of practical subroutines and programs



David Lawrence



DAVID LAWRENCE

THE WORKING SINCLAIR QL

SUNS

224

2634

2634-422 9



The Working Sinclair QL

A library of practical
subroutines and programs



David Lawrence



First published 1984 by:
Sunshine Books (an imprint of Scot Press Ltd.)
12-13 Little Newport Street
London WC2R 3LD

Copyright © David Lawrence, 1984

© Sinclair QL, QL Microdrive and SuperBASIC are Trade Marks of
Sinclair Research Ltd.

© The contents of the QL are the copyright of Sinclair Research Ltd.

© Quill, Archive, Abacus and Easel are Trade Marks of Psion Software
Ltd.

*All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, elec-
tronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording and/or otherwise, without
the prior written permission of the Publishers.*

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
Lawrence, David

The working Sinclair QL.

1. Sinclair QL (Computer) — Programming

2. Super BASIC (Computer program language)

I. Title

001.64'24 QA76.8.S625

ISBN 0-946408-46-7

Cover design by Grad Graphic Design Ltd.
Cover illustration by Stuart Unwin

CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
Program Notes	vii
Introduction	ix
1 Experiments with Time	1
<i>Anaclock</i>	1
<i>Clock</i>	14
<i>Timer</i>	19
<i>Event</i>	33
2 Sonet Lumière	41
<i>Designer</i>	41
<i>3-D Graph</i>	56
<i>Screen</i>	63
<i>Characters</i>	71
<i>Sound Demo</i>	87
<i>Music</i>	90
3 Seriouser and Seriouser	97
<i>Unifile</i>	98
<i>Nnumber</i>	117
<i>MultiQ</i>	129
4 Money Matters	145
<i>Banker</i>	145
<i>Accountant</i>	158
<i>Budget</i>	171
APPENDIX: Instructions for Use of Checksum Generator Tables	193

Contents in detail

CHAPTER 1

Experiments with Time

Anaclock: runs a traditionally-faced clock in high resolution — defining a circle — Clock: provides a very different way of telling the time — Timer: provides you with 12 timers which run concurrently and are each capable of sounding an alarm and displaying a reminder message — Event: turns the QL into a stopwatch capable of giving a permanent record of times for a series of events.

CHAPTER 2

Son et Lumière

Designer: a tool which allows line drawings far larger than a single screen to be constructed, manipulated and displayed — 3-D Graph: using turtle graphics to produce a clear and attractive display for complex figures — Screen: copies the contents of the screen to a printer — the arrangement of screen memory on the QL — Characters: designs and stores your own customised character sets — character memory — Sound Demo: a simple routine to permit experiments with the sound parameters — Music: allows complex tunes to be input in a comprehensible form and played.

CHAPTER 3

Seriouser and Seriouser

Unifile: a powerful personal filing system capable of storing a wide variety of information for instant recall — Nnumber: a program which creates a dictionary of names and numbers for almost anything you wish, allowing you to create invoices, stock valuations or even a calorie count of the day's menu — MultiQ: a multiple choice test generator.

CHAPTER 4

Money Matters

Banker: allows the user to keep a clear and continuously updated record of a bank account over a 12-monthly period — Accountant: produces a set of traditionally laid out accounts — Budget: stores and processes large amounts of information about family finances and produces an analysis of the picture over a 12-month period, allowing 'what if?' decisions to be

Program Notes

The programs in this book have all been word processed to improve their presentation in book form. The length of the programs has meant that it would be quite impractical to print them at a width of 37 characters, corresponding to the display generated by the QL on a standard television. In fact, the programs extend up to a maximum of 50 characters in width, with any carry over to the next line being indented to the same extent as the line start. Where a line does carry over, therefore, the spaces which make up the indentation of the second part of the line should be ignored.

Please note the section in the Introduction about how to use this book.

Debugging programs

Each program commentary includes test procedures which, if followed, should ensure that the completed program works as specified. Should you run into difficulties, however, there is always the Checksum Generator program and Checksum Tables, designed to show whether the program you have entered is the same as that listed in the book. Full details of the use of the program and tables are given in the Appendix.

Introduction

This book is part of one of the most successful series of microcomputer books ever published. In 1982, when the first 'Working Micro' book was issued, there were very few publishers who were prepared to believe that ordinary micro owners wanted to use and understand their machines, wanted to take *control* over them, learning to program by — programming. The majority of books were filled with games and trivia or consisted of yet another 'Beginners' guide to...'. The prospect of a book which set out to provide a collection of solid, useful programs and, at the same time, to give some insight into the methods employed in serious programming, didn't seem likely to set the world on fire.

But I was convinced, and the people at Sunshine Books were convinced, that the 'Working Micro' books were exactly what people were looking for, that here was a huge gap in the provision of books for the growing army of micro owners. And we were right.

Since that time, the 'Working Micro' books have followed microcomputers into almost every country where they have been sold. They have been, or are being, translated into 14 languages. *The Working Spectrum*, the first of the series, has been published in the United States and several European countries. As the book was written and as more and more people discovered the virtues of the Spectrum, it seemed that the approach of the book and the power of the machine were simply made for each other.

Now the QL heralds a new generation of Sinclair machines, which do indeed represent a Quantum Leap forwards in power, memory, and in terms of the SuperBASIC language it runs. No book can exhaust the possibilities of a machine whose capabilities would have been regarded as science fiction a few years ago, but I have enjoyed the challenge of putting it through at least some of its paces — so, I hope, will you.

How to use this book

You can use the book in a variety of different ways:

- 1) As a collection of useful programs which you can adapt and develop for your own purposes.
- 2) As a collection of subroutines out of which you can construct your own programs.

In terms of the format of the displays generated by the programs, the book is specifically aimed at those employing the QL in conjunction with a standard colour television. In deciding which combination of equipment to base a book on, I have always worked on the principle that it is easier to adapt a program to better equipment than to try and downgrade something which was written for a more sophisticated system. Owners of colour monitors will not find it hard to make adjustments to make full use of the extra screen capacity they are able to bring to bear.

However you decide to use this book, do remember that it was written *as a book* and not just as a random collection of programs in no particular order. I very often come across readers with problems because they have jumped into some of the more complex programs which fall towards the end of the book, without preparation. The earlier programs in the book, while useful and interesting in themselves, are also meant as an introduction to what comes later. Alongside the early programs goes a much higher level of explanation so that, by the time more complex programs are reached, the reader has a good grasp of some of the techniques being used.

CHAPTER 1

Experiments with Time

It is always difficult to know where to start a book like this. Too complex a program and readers may find themselves floundering before they have picked up some of the simple pointers which will make programs increasingly easy to understand as the book goes on. On the other hand, if the first programs are too trivial, many readers may not bother to discover that there are more substantial offerings to come.

As a result I have decided to stick, in this first chapter, to a set of four programs which deal with time, and the way it may be manipulated on the QL. The programs are relatively simple ones, but they introduce a wide range of concepts which will be used in later and more complex programs. In addition, in their use of calculation, sound and high resolution graphics, the programs will provide a good introduction to some of the outstanding abilities of your QL.

The programs in this chapter are:

ANACLOCK: Which runs a traditionally-faced clock in high resolution.

CLOCK: Which provides a very different way of telling the time.

TIMER: Which provides you with 12 timers which run concurrently and are each capable of sounding an alarm and displaying a reminder message.

EVENT: Which turns the QL into a stopwatch capable of giving of a permanent record of times for a series of events.

PROGRAM 1.1: ANACLOCK

Program function

The purpose of this program is produce a replica of a clock face on the screen, complete with hands which move to keep pace with the current time. In the course of following the program through, you will learn a great deal about the methods employed in this book, so it is recommended that

In terms of the format of the displays generated by the programs, the book is specifically aimed at those employing the QL in conjunction with a standard colour television. In deciding which combination of equipment to base a book on, I have always worked on the principle that it is easier to adapt a program to better equipment than to try and downgrade something which was written for a more sophisticated system. Owners of colour monitors will not find it hard to make adjustments to make full use of the extra screen capacity they are able to bring to bear.

However you decide to use this book, do remember that it was written as *a book* and not just as a random collection of programs in no particular order. I very often come across readers with problems because they have jumped into some of the more complex programs which fall towards the end of the book, without preparation. The earlier programs in the book, while useful and interesting in themselves, are also meant as an introduction to what comes later. Alongside the early programs goes a much higher level of explanation so that, by the time more complex programs are reached, the reader has a good grasp of some of the techniques being used.

CHAPTER 1

Experiments with Time

It is always difficult to know where to start a book like this. Too complex a program and readers may find themselves floundering before they have picked up some of the simple pointers which will make programs increasingly easy to understand as the book goes on. On the other hand, if the first programs are too trivial, many readers may not bother to discover that there are more substantial offerings to come.

As a result I have decided to stick, in this first chapter, to a set of four programs which deal with time, and the way it may be manipulated on the QL. The programs are relatively simple ones, but they introduce a wide range of concepts which will be used in later and more complex programs. In addition, in their use of calculation, sound and high resolution graphics, the programs will provide a good introduction to some of the outstanding abilities of your QL.

The programs in this chapter are:

ANACLOCK: Which runs a traditionally-faced clock in high resolution.

CLOCK: Which provides a very different way of telling the time.

TIMER: Which provides you with 12 timers which run concurrently and are each capable of sounding an alarm and displaying a reminder message.

EVENT: Which turns the QL into a stopwatch capable of giving of a permanent record of times for a series of events.

PROGRAM 1.1: ANACLOCK

Program function

The purpose of this program is produce a replica of a clock face on the screen, complete with hands which move to keep pace with the current time. In the course of following the program through, you will learn a great deal about the methods employed in this book, so it is recommended that you read the accompanying commentary with some care.

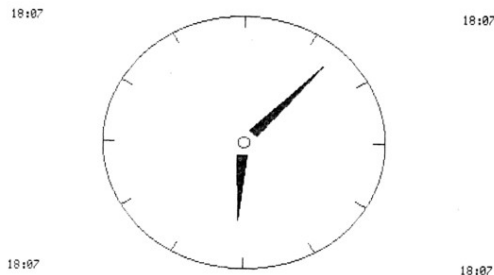


Figure 1.1: Screen Dump of Clock Face.

The ideas introduced during the course of the program include:

- 1) Saving programs during development.
- 2) Initialising variables.
- 3) Passing parameters to procedures.
- 4) Control modules.
- 5) The use of repeat loops.
- 6) Setting and reading the internal clock.
- 7) High resolution mode (mode 4).
- 8) Program flow and readability.
- 9) Modular programming.

Module 1.1.1: Saving the program

These four lines may seem a trivial place to start, but those who have worked with my books for earlier machines will know that this module can save an immense amount of heartache in the development of programs.

Most people learn only by bitter experience that programs *must* be saved regularly as they are developed. Sooner or later most of us reach a time when hours of work is thrown away because of a momentary surge in the power supply, a blown fuse or a knock to the micro or plug. Experienced users will have lost only some 15 minutes work because they will never have allowed more than 15 minutes to pass without SAVEing the program entered thus far.

The purpose of this module is to encourage you to make regular copies of the program you are working on by simply entering 'psave'.

The module precedes all my own programs but, since only the program name changes, it will not be included in the rest of the programs listed in the book — but you should remember to add it.

Module 1.1.1: Lines 1–3

```
1 DEFINE PROCEDURE psave
2 DELETE MDV1__ANACLOCK : SAVE MDV1__ANACLOCK
3 DELETE MDV2__ANACLOCK : SAVE MDV2__ANACLOCK
4 END DEFINE psave
```

Commentary

Lines 2–3: Deleting any previous version of the program before SAVEing ensures that the 'ALREADY EXISTS' message is not encountered. Some programmers adopt an even more cautious approach by numbering each version of the program, eg ANACLOCK01, ANACLOCK02, etc. The advantage of this is that, if something goes wrong during the SAVEing of the program so that the program is lost from memory and not properly SAVED on the microdrive, a previous version will still be recoverable. When the program is finished, the development versions can be erased. Line 3 can be omitted by those who are prepared to rely on one microdrive to store their program, but I would recommend caution since even on the most reliable system it can be costly to have only one copy of your work.

Testing

Ensure that you have a cartridge in the drive. Enter

psave[ENTER]

and drive 1 should start up. After a moment, the light should go out on drive 1 and drive 2 should start. Finally, the flashing cursor should return to the bottom of the screen and drive 2 stop. You can now delete the three lines in memory and reload the program from the disk by entering

new[ENTER] (erases the current program)

load mdv1__anaclock[ENTER]

When the loading process has finished, list the program and the module should have been reinstated.

Module 1.1.2: Initialising the variables

Every program worth the name uses variables and constants, that is to say, labels whose values can be changed during the course of the program or at least from program to program. Very few variables absolutely *must* have their values declared when the program is first run, and people often leave it until the middle of a program, when a variable is absolutely vital, to define their values. This can be mistaken policy because, as the program is developed, it becomes increasingly difficult to see what the value of the important variables is when the program first commences. In general, it is good practice to declare at the very beginning of the program the value of

the major variables, and this process is known as 'initialisation', though exceptions are often made when memory is limited — hardly a problem on the QL. Some variables *must* be defined before they are used. For instance, you can enter a line such as:

```
1050 T = 50
```

in the middle of a program, without having given T any previous value, but if you try:

```
1050 A = T*2
```

then the QL will stop with an ERROR IN EXPRESSION message — it does not recognise the variable 'T'.

Another class of variables which must always be declared before they are used are arrays, eg T(10,10) or TS(10,10). No use whatsoever can be made of an array before a DIM statement has set up the space for it in the memory. Thus even a line such as:

```
T(1,1) = 50
```

which would work for a normal variable, will stop the program since the QL has not been told the details of the array.

Module 1.1.2: Lines 2000 – 2070

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 minute2=0
2040 x1=0 : x2=0 : x3=0 : y1=0 : y2=0 : y3=0
2050 m_angle=0 : h_angle=0
2060 e_flag=0
2070 END DEFine initialise
```

Commentary

Line 2010: At the risk of boring those who are already familiar with SuperBASIC, it is probably better to mention 'procedures' briefly before we go any further, since all the programs which follow rely entirely on them.

Those of you who have programmed extensively on other machines which do not possess a structured BASIC like the QL's will know that competent programming relies on the use of subroutines to break down a program into manageable parts. It is the job of the programmer to know where each subroutine is within the program and to be able to call each up with a GOSUB command which specifies the start line number of the subroutine. SuperBASIC provides a far superior tool for programming known as the 'procedure'. Once entered into memory with a start (DEFine PROCedure) and an end (END DEFine), the *name* of the procedure becomes effectively a keyword in SuperBASIC, and entering the name will

cause the QL to carry out the procedure. In the programs which follow you will find no subroutines, and in the testing procedures you will mostly be asked to test your routines by entering their procedure names — a far more elegant way than entering meaningless GOSUBs.

The uses of the variables defined in this module will be described during the course of the commentary on the main part of the program.

Testing

Before going on, enter:

```
initialise[ENTER]
```

and the flashing cursor should return almost immediately. If you have entered any syntax errors, these will be shown up. If for any reason you clear the memory by using RUN or CLEAR, or by storing the half-finished program on microdrive and switching off, remember to initialise again *before* trying any of the tests for subsequent modules. If you do not, the modules will come across variables which have not been declared and the program will stop with an error.

Module 1.1.3: Setting the time

Before we can embark on creating a clock, we must have some means to set the time. The purpose of this module is to allow the user to input the current time in hours and minutes and have it stored in the QL's powerful internal clock. In the course of the module we shall be introduced to the use of REPEAT loops and the system variable DATES, which records the current time and date.

Module 1.1.3: Lines 3000 – 3160

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure set_time
3020 REMark *****
3030 AT 1,12 : PRINT "CLOCK SETTING"
3040 REPEAT hour
3050   AT 5,1 : INPUT "HOUR (0-23):";h_temp
3060   IF h_temp >=0 AND h_temp <=23 THEN EXIT
3070   hour
3080 REPEAT minute
3090   AT 7,1 : INPUT "MINUTE (0-59):";m_temp
3100   IF m_temp >=0 AND m_temp <=59 THEN EXIT
3110   minute
3120 temp#=DATE#
3130 time=3600*temp#(13 TO 14)+60*temp#(16 TO 17)+temp#(19 TO 20)
```

```

3140 new_time=3600*h_temp+60*m_temp
3150 ADATE new_time-time
3160 END DEFine set_time

```

Commentary

Lines 3040 – 3070 and 3080 – 3110: The purpose of these loops is to continue asking for the hour or minute to be input until a sensible value is received — that is a value between zero and 23 for an hour, zero and 59 for a minute. Lines 3060 and 3100 have the function of jumping out of the loop when a valid entry is made. Note that this is not an infallible method of proofing the program against operator error — simply pressing RETURN without a number will stop the program on the QL. In later programs you will see how this can be overcome but, if it does happen, simply type RETRY and the prompt will be repeated.

Lines 3120 – 3150: The actual setting of the time on the QL is quite simple, and can be done on two levels, either setting the whole date or simply the time within a particular day. When the QL is first switched on, its internal clock is set to midnight on the 1st January 1961 and it begins to count in seconds. You can see the current result of this count by entering PRINT DATE, because DATE is a variable set up by the QL itself to contain the current time in seconds. Printing out DATE, however, will illustrate that human beings do not find the time in seconds very meaningful. The QL therefore provides a second means of reading the time, DATE\$. The format of DATE\$ is:

YYYY MMM DD HH: MM: SS

with the month being specified in three-letter shorthand, rather than as a number.

Not only does DATE\$ make reading the time possible, the system provides two methods for the user to input a new time, after which the QL will immediately reset its internal clock to the specified time.

We shall start with the shorter of the two methods, which involves adjusting the internal clock by means of the ADATE command. The function of ADATE (Adjust DATE) is to add or subtract a specified number of seconds from the current time. In order to accomplish this, line 3130 first copies the current time into the variable TEMPS. The hours, minutes and seconds digits are then multiplied and added together in order to find the total number of seconds, which are stored in the variable TIME. Note that, in doing this, we can simply multiply the strings characters containing the values, TEMPS(13 to 14) for the hours, TEMPS(16 to 17) for the minutes and TEMPS(19 to 20) for the seconds. 'Coercion', or the QL's ability to treat a string as a number when a program line requires it, takes care of the rest. Line 3140 sets the variable NEW__TIME to the value in seconds of the time just input by the user. Since, as we have already mentioned, ADATE

works by adjusting the existing time, all we have to do is to use ADATE and specify the difference between TIME and NEW__TIME. This sets the hours, minutes and seconds elements of the internal timer to what has been input by the user — it makes no difference to the year, month and day elements.

Testing

Clear the screen, then type:

```
set_time[ENTER]
```

and you should be prompted to give the time in hours and minutes. Inputting an invalid figure for either should result in the prompt being repeated. After a time has been accepted, the program will stop. You can now test what you have entered further by typing:

```
print date$(ENTER)
```

The hours, minutes and seconds should be what you have input, plus any delay in printing them out.

Module 1.1.4: Setting up the clock face

Having input the time, we come to the drawing of the face of the clock, on to which later modules will place the hands.

Module 1.1.4: Lines 4000 – 4120

```

4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure clock_face
4020 REMark *****
4030 CIRCLE 80,50,48
4040 CIRCLE 80,50,2
4050 FOR i=0 TO 330 STEP 30
4060   x1=80+COS(RAD(i))*44
4070   y1=50+SIN(RAD(i))*44
4080   x2=80+COS(RAD(i))*48
4090   y2=50+SIN(RAD(i))*48
4100   LINE x1,y1 TO x2,y2
4110 NEXT i
4120 END DEFine clock_face

```

Commentary

Defining a circle

The basis of this module and the next is the technique needed to pinpoint positions around a circle. This is based on the fact that any point on the circumference of a circle can be determined if the following pieces of information are known:

- a) The radius of the circle. (RADIUS)
- b) The angle that has to be travelled clockwise from the three o'clock position to arrive at the specified point. (ANGLE)
- c) The coordinates of the centre of the circle. (CENTRE X and CENTRE Y)

Given these three, the position will be expressed by two formulae:

X coordinate = $\text{RADIUS} \times \cos(\text{ANGLE}/180 \times \pi) + \text{CENTRE X}$
 Y coordinate = $\text{RADIUS} \times \sin(\text{ANGLE}/180 \times \pi) + \text{CENTRE Y}$

Space does not permit us to analyse here why this should be, but any good introductory book on trigonometry will lay out the logic in full. If you want to test the technique, enter the following on your machine:

```
10 CLS
20 FOR i = 0 TO 359
30 x = 80 + COS(RAD(i))*50
40 y = 50 + SIN(RAD(i))*50
50 POINT x,y
60 NEXT i
```

and you will find that a very presentable circle is drawn, with its centre at 80(x), 50(y). Here, the 80 and 50 figures represent the centre of the circle (80 across, 50 up). The only thing you may not recognise is the RAD function. In order for the QL to be able to recognise an angle it must be presented in the form of units called radians (one radian is equal to $180/\pi$). The RAD function performs the task of producing a result in radians when it is given a figure in degrees to work on.

Lines 4030 – 4040: One large circle to define the outside of the clock, one small one at the centre of the face, around which the hands will turn.

Lines 4050 – 4110: The circle techniques described above are used to draw in markings every 30 degrees around the circle — ie every five minutes on the clock face. The two points calculated for every repetition of the loop are first of all a point on the circumference of the large circle, and then one four pixels in towards the centre. Drawing a line between them makes a series of neat markers around the face.

Testing

Enter

clock__face [ENTER]

and you should see the clock face drawn.

Module 1.1.5: Calculating minutes and hours

In this module we get down to the real work of the program, which begins with the extraction and examination of the value for the current hour and minute from the system variable DATE\$.

Module 1.1.5: Lines 5000 – 5130

```
5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFine PROCedure time_values
5020 REMark *****
5030 REPEAT minute_test
5040 LET temp$=DATE$
5050 hour=temp$(13 TO 14)
5060 minute1=temp$(16 TO 17)
5070 IF minute1<>minute2 THEN EXIT minute_test
5080 IF INKEY$="" THEN e_flag=1 : EXIT
5090 minute_test
5090 END REPEAT minute_test
5100 minute2=minute1
5105 m_angle2=m_angle : h_angle2=h_angle
5110 m_angle=90-(6*minute1)
5120 h_angle=90-(30*hour+5*minute1/12)
5130 END DEFine time_values
```

Commentary

Lines 5030 – 5090: What this loop does is continually to extract the time from DATE\$ and store it in the variable TEMP\$. It is, of course, quite possible to work directly on DATE\$ but this could result in errors if the process of slicing up the string began a fraction of a second before the hour was about to change. If the hour changed in between lines of the program being carried out, it would be possible to end up with a value of, say, 11.00, when the real time was 12.00. Having extracted the value for the hours and minutes, the loop tests the current minute against the minute value for the last time the clock hands were moved. If the current minute is different, then line 5070 jumps out of the loop. In line 5080, provision is made so that if the user presses the space bar a flag is set (the variable E_FLAG) and the loop terminates. In the normal course of the program, this loop will simply wait until the minute changes.

Line 5100: The new minute is stored until the next time this procedure is called, when it will be used as the next benchmark for a change of minute.

Line 5110: The same is done for the previous angles of the hour and minute hands. These need to be recorded in order that the existing hands can be erased before new ones are drawn.

Lines 5120 – 5130: The angles of the hour and minute hands. The QL measures circles from a point that we would call three o'clock and moves around anti-clockwise. Twelve o'clock is therefore -90 and the minute

value must be subtracted from that — six degrees per minute. The hour angles consists of 30 degrees for each hour plus five degrees for each 12 minutes.

Testing

Enter

time__values [ENTER]

and you should almost instantaneously find that execution stops and the flashing cursor returns. This is because the value of MINUTE2 should be zero, and the loop will immediately stop when it samples the real time. MINUTE2 has now been reset to the current minute, so follow the procedure again and, unless you are unlucky enough to just catch the minute change, you should find that the QL will wait for a period before giving you back the cursor — the wait was for the new minute to arrive. If you like, you can print out the values of MINUTE1 and HOUR1, then print DATES, illustrating that the two values have been extracted from the internal clock.

Module 1.1.6: Drawing the hands

Having calculated all the necessary figures to arrive at the time, we can now proceed to employ the QL's graphics capabilities to draw the hands of the clock. If you do not remember the general introduction to the mathematics of drawing a circle given earlier, you would be wise to go back and take a quick look at it.

Module 1.1.6: Lines 6000 – 6200

```
6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFine PROCedure hand_draw(angle,size1,
    size2,colour)
6020 REMark *****
6030   angle1=RAD(angle)
6040   angle2=RAD(angle+20)
6050   angle3=RAD(angle-20)
6060   y1=50+size1*SIN(angle1)
6070   x1=80+size1*COS(angle1)
6080   y2=50+size2*SIN(angle2)
6090   x2=80+size2*COS(angle2)
6100   y3=50+size2*SIN(angle3)
6110   x3=80+size2*COS(angle3)
6120   INK colour
6130   FILL 1
6140   LINE x1,y1 TO x2,y2 TO x3,y3 TO x1,y1
6150   FILL 0
6160   AT 0,0 : PRINT temp#(13 TO 17)
6170   AT 0,69 : PRINT temp#(13 TO 17)
```

```
6180   AT 19,0 : PRINT temp#(13 TO 17)
6190   AT 19,69 : PRINT temp#(13 TO 17)
6200 END DEFine hand_points
```

Commentary

Line 6010: Our first example of a procedure using parameters passed from the rest of the program. The four variable names appended to the procedure name allow the program to use the same procedure for different purposes. The four variables will be used by the procedure — in this case to determine where to draw the clock hand, how large it should be and what colour. In this way, exactly the same procedure can be used to draw hour and minute hands.

Lines 6030 – 6050: These lines define three angles. Their purpose is to allow the program to pinpoint three spots on the screen which will be the corners of a triangular clock hand. ANGLE1 is the angle of the tip of the hand, relative to the centre of the face. ANGLE2 and ANGLE3, which are respectively slightly ahead and behind ANGLE1, point to the two ends of the base of the triangle. If you are not clear on this, don't worry, all will become plain when the hands are drawn on the screen.

Lines 6060 – 6110: If you tried the example circle program earlier, you will recognise these lines. They plot points which are SIZE1 or SIZE2 pixels out from the centre of the circle, in the direction indicated by ANGLE1, ANGLE2 or ANGLE3. SIZE1 represents the distance to the tip of the hand, SIZE2 the shorter distance to the broad base of the hand.

Lines 6120 – 6150: These lines draw the hand. Its colour is passed to the procedure in the form of the variable COLOUR. The FILL command ensures that the completed triangle will be FILLED with the prevailing ink colour.

Lines 6160 – 6190: As an added touch, the time is displayed in digital format at the four corners of the screen — note that the coordinates refer to the high resolution screen which will be set up by the next module.

Testing

To set up this module for testing would require a number of temporary lines to be entered. Since the complete program requires only a few lines to be added, it is recommended that you leave testing until the program is completed.

Module 1.1.7: Making it all work together

At this stage, you may well be wondering why the program is written as it is. Could not all of the functions we have described have been put together

and made to run with the use of a few GOTOs. Unfortunately, that is how many published programs are constructed. In this book you will find that all of the programs are constructed out of clearly identifiable modules, most of them procedures in their own right.

The reason for this is that programs written in modules can be more easily read, they can be more easily debugged, they can be changed by substituting modules which work more efficiently if you learn new methods, they can be added to by patching in more modules. There is much to be learned from the programs in this book, but probably the most valuable lesson of all for your future programming will be the technique of modular programming.

The current module is the key to the technique for, when all the working modules have been entered and tested, we need one more to control the flow of the program. In a sense, the module you are about to enter is the program — everything else is merely an extension of it.

Module 1.1.7: Lines 1000 – 1180

```
1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark control loop
1020 REMark *****
1030 PAPER 2 : INK 7 : BORDER 0
1040 CLS : CLS#0
1050 initialise
1060 set_time
1070 INK 7 : PAPER 0 : MODE 4 : CLS
1080 clock_face
1090 REPEAT control
1100   time_values
1110   IF e_flag THEN EXIT control
1120   hand_draw m_angle2,40,5,0
1130   hand_draw h_angle2,30,5,0
1140   hand_draw m_angle,40,5,7
1150   hand_draw h_angle,30,5,2
1160 END REPEAT control
1170 MODE 8
1180 STOP
```

Commentary

Line 1040: It is always a good idea, at the beginning of a program, to clear not only the main screen but the command lines at the bottom (CLS #0).

Lines 1050 – 1060: Note how naturally the control structure develops using the names of the modules — the control structure becomes in itself a brief description of the program's work.

Line 1070: The program is designed to run in high resolution mode, mode 4. In this mode, in return for halving the number of possible colours on the screen at one time, we shall get a sharper definition of the clock face.

Lines 1090 – 1160: This loop will continue sampling the time using TIME_VALUES and drawing the hands. Note how economical the process is. The four lines from 1120 to 1150 first tell the HAND_DRAW procedure to draw the current hands in black (ie erase them), then draw the minute hand in white and a slightly smaller hour hand in red.

If at any point the program returns from TIME_VALUES with the value of the variable E_FLAG set to 1 rather than 0 (indicating that the user has pressed the space bar), the loop is terminated by line 1110. This use of IF followed by a variable name is a common one which depends on the fact that the IF statement will be carried out if the variable has any other value than zero.

Line 1170: The final act of the program, before terminating, is to return the screen to the lower resolution mode, mode 8.

Testing

The program should now be fully functioning. Run it, enter the time and you should see the clock face displayed with the hands in the correct position.

General comment

One feature of the program can really only be noticed once it has been fully entered. If you examine the program you will notice that it contains not a single GOTO instruction, a fact which may surprise you if you have learned your computing on a less capable machine than the QL. This is quite deliberate. The whole development of the BASIC language over recent years has been in the direction of eliminating the need for GOTO.

While it is possible to carry this practice to absurd lengths (and waste considerable amounts of memory in doing so), there are good reasons for trying to reduce reliance on GOTO as a part of your programs. The problem with GOTO is that it is so arbitrary, an instruction to jump which does not, when the program is read later, explain itself. Using GOTO, a program can quickly become a mass of arbitrary jumps which are difficult to plan or explain and, what is worse, encourage you to patch a messy program together with GOTOs when your time would be far better spent redesigning it. The aim of programming on a machine which provides REPEAT loops is to write a program which flows from beginning to end without arbitrary jumps. It is not an aim to become neurotic about — some programmers talk as if a few GOTOs in a program are a sign of brain damage — but you will be surprised how much more satisfying the planning and execution of a program is if you can learn to make it work on the basis of things happening until an EXIT condition is met, rather than jumping about all over the place.

PROGRAM 1.2: CLOCK**Program function**

One of the most enjoyable things about computers with graphic displays as good as the QL's, is that they allow you to play about at displaying things in new and imaginative ways. Having just entered a fairly standard clock, this next program gives rather a different view of time. In Clock, hours and minutes are represented by two lines which sweep from left to right and top to bottom, dividing the screen into four rectangles of different colours. Much of the material in Clock is similar to that in Anaclock, so the explanations can be accordingly shortened.

Module 1.2.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module. The uses of the variables described will be outlined in the course of the commentary on the program.

Module 1.2.1: Lines 2000–2070

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 minute=10 : hour=10
2040 PAPER 0 : INK 7 : CLS : CLS #0
2050 x1=20 : x2=140 : y1=86 : y2=15
2060 e_flag=0
2070 END DEFine initialise
```

Module 1.2.2: Time input

The same module as was included in Anaclock.

Module 1.2.2: Lines 3000–3180

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure set_time
3020 REMark *****
3030 CLS
3040 AT 1,12 : PRINT "CLOCK SETTING"
3050 REPEAT hour
3060 AT 5,1 : INPUT "HOUR (0-23):":h_temp
3070 IF h_temp >=0 AND h_temp <=23 THEN EXIT
3080 END REPEAT hour
3090 REPEAT minute
3100 AT 7,1 : INPUT "MINUTE (0-59):":m_temp
3110 IF m_temp >=0 AND m_temp <=59 THEN EXIT
3120 END REPEAT minute
3130 temp$=DATE$
```

```
3140 time=3600*temp$(13 TO 14)+60*temp$(16 TO
17)+temp$(19 TO 20)
3150 new_time=3600*h_temp+60*m_temp
3160 ADATE new_time-time
3170 CLS
3180 END DEFine set_time
```

Module 1.2.3: Setting up the screen border

This module prints an hour and minute grid along the lefthand side and top of the screen.

Module 1.2.3: Lines 4000–4110

```
4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure draw_framework
4020 REMark *****
4030 FOR i=1 TO 60
4040 yt=88 : IF i/5=INT(i/5) THEN yt=90
4050 LINE x1+i*2-1,yt TO x1+i*2-1,y1
4060 NEXT i
4070 FOR i=1 TO 12
4080 xt=18 : IF i/3=INT(i/3) THEN xt=16
4090 LINE xt,y1-i*6+1 TO x1,y1-i*6+1
4100 NEXT i
4110 END DEFine draw_framework
```

Commentary

Lines 4030–4060: The minute values are spaced out along the top of the screen in white. The loop draws 60 small vertical lines at regular intervals across the screen. These begin at X1 pixels across the screen (20) and Y1 pixels up (86). The X coordinates increase with the loop variable I and every fifth line, when INT(I) will equal I, the line is made slightly longer by adding 2 to the Y coordinate of the top of the line (YT). The effect of this is that the markers for five minutes stand out.

Lines 4070–4100: The same principle except that here it is the Y coordinate which increases with the loop variable I, so that the lines move down the screen, representing the hours. Every third hour line is emphasised by drawing it slightly longer.

Testing

Type:

initialise [ENTER]

draw__framework [ENTER]

and you should see the grid drawn on the screen. You will probably note that the tiny minute markers appear not to be perfectly spaced. The reason for this is that in low resolution mode (mode 8), which we are using to

obtain all the colours we want — spacing lines at small intervals leads to some of them falling 'in-between' the actual pixel positions on the screen, so that they are in fact moved one place to the side.

Module 1.2.4: Calculating hours and minutes

This module is parallel to the time calculation module in the last program, though it is slightly simpler because angles do not have to be calculated.

Module 1.2.4: Lines 5000–5120

```
5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFine PROCedure time_values
5020 REMark *****
5030 minute_temp=minute
5040 REPEAT new_minute
5050 LET temp:=DATE$
5060 hour=temp$(13 TO 14)
5070 IF hour>11 THEN hour=hour-12
5080 minute=temp$(16 TO 17)
5090 IF INKEY$="" THEN e_flag=1 : EXIT
    new_minute
5100 IF minute<>minute_temp THEN EXIT
    new_minute
5110 END REPEAT new_minute
5120 END DEFine time_values
```

Commentary

Lines 5030–5110: The only differences between this module and Anaclock are that here the value of the last minute acted on is stored at the beginning of the module rather than when the loop is ended, and that the value HOUR is never allowed to exceed 12. Anaclock, because its values describe positions on a circle, can afford to work in 24-hour time — values over 12 simply cause the angle of the hand to 'wrap around' the dial once. Clock, since it works in straight lines, would quickly move off the screen if hours with a value over 12 were generated.

Testing

As for the equivalent module in Anaclock, having initialised the program, call the procedure once to set up the variables and then a second time to ensure that it does wait for the minute to change.

Module 1.2.5: Displaying the time

In this module we get down to the task of displaying on the screen the rectangles which will depict the time. What the module is intended to achieve is the effect of a line sweeping across the screen to depict the

minutes, and another descending, which records the hours. This is accomplished by dividing the screen into four rectangular sections, red, purple, blue and yellow, the edges of these rectangles representing the lines for hours and minutes, as in Figure 1.2.

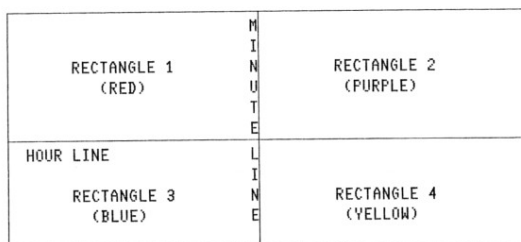


Figure 1.2: The Screen Divided into 4 Rectangular Sections.

Using the variables calculated by the previous module, the LINE command makes it a simple matter to place these rectangles exactly where we want them on the screen.

Module 1.2.5: Lines 6000–6250

```
6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFine PROCedure draw_line(hour,minute)
6020 REMark *****
6030 hy=y1-hour*6 : IF hour=0 THEN hy=85
6040 mx=x1+minute*2 : IF minute=0 THEN mx=21
6050 INK 0
6060 FILL 1
6070 LINE x1,y1 TO x2,y1 TO x2,y2 TO x1,y2 TO
    x1,y1
6080 FILL 0
6090 FILL 1
6100 INK 2
6110 LINE x1,y1 TO mx-1,y1 TO mx-1,hy+1 TO
    x1,hy+1 TO x1,y1
6120 FILL 0
6130 INK 3
6140 FILL 1
6150 LINE mx,y1 TO x2,y1 TO x2,hy+1 TO mx,hy+1
    TO mx,y1
6160 FILL 0
6170 INK 1
6180 FILL 1
6190 LINE x1,hy TO mx-1,hy TO mx-1,y2 TO x1,y2
```

```

        TO x1,hy
6200  FILL 0
6210  INK 6
6220  FILL 1
6230  LINE mx,hy TO x2,hy TO x2,y2 TO mx,y2 TO
        mx,hy
6240  FILL 0
6250  END DEFine draw_line

```

Commentary

Lines 6030 – 6040: These lines set up the distances across the screen and down which will represent the hours and minutes. The hour line will move down six pixels for every hour which passes, and the minute line across two pixels for every minute.

Lines 6050 – 6080: One of the reasons that this program is slightly simpler than Anaclock is that we have not troubled to remember the positions at which things were drawn for the last minute and hour. The reason for this is that all we need to do in order to erase a previous clock face is to black out the whole rectangle. This is accomplished by drawing a line, in black, around the whole clock face, with FILL set. The function of FILL is to record the coordinates between which lines are drawn and, whenever they make up a closed area, to paint that area with the current INK colour. Drawing a line around the face with FILL set, quickly and effectively erases the previous face. When this has been accomplished it is important to switch off FILL. If this is not done, the QL will become confused as to the coordinates of the shape it is being asked to FILL when further rectangles are drawn — no coordinates are forgotten until FILL is set to zero again.

Lines 6090 – 6120: The first of four sets of lines which draw the colour rectangles which will picture the hours and minutes (see Figure 1.2). These lines draw the upper lefthand rectangle. Lines are drawn from the top lefthand corner, across to the position of the minute line, down to the position of the hour line, back across to the lefthand side of the rectangle and back to the top lefthand corner. Once the rectangle is complete, the FILL command paints it red.

Lines 6130 – 6240: The remaining three rectangles are drawn in the same manner. Note that in order to draw all four rectangles, we only need six variables. X1 and Y1 represent the top lefthand corner of the clock face, X2 and Y2 represent the bottom righthand corner. The position of the minute line is held in MX and that of the hour line in HY. MX, HY is a point inside the clock face where the corners of all the four rectangles meet. In drawing the rectangles, a slight gap (MX – 1 to MX and HY + 1 to HY) is left so that the minute and hour lines will be etched in background black.

Testing

Type:

draw_line 6,30[ENTER]

You should see the four rectangles of roughly equal size displayed on the screen.

Module 1.2.6: Putting it all together

Having entered all the working elements of the program, we can now construct a control module to execute them in the correct order. The use of procedures makes the module completely self-explanatory.

Module 1.2.6: Lines 1000 – 1110

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark control loop
1020 REMark *****
1030  initialise
1040  set_time
1050  draw_framework
1060  REPEAT control
1070    time_values
1080    IF e_flag THEN EXIT control
1090    draw_line hour,minute
1100  END REPEAT control
1110  STOP

```

Testing

You are now in a position to run the full program, input the time and see it displayed.

PROGRAM 1.3: TIMER

Program function

Timer provides you with 12 flexible count-down timers, each of which can be separately programmed to sound an alarm after a specified period and display a short message indicating what the particular occurrence of the alarm is for.

New techniques covered in this program:

- 1) The 'menu' module.
- 2) The simple use of BEEP.
- 3) Adjusting the time with SDATE.

```

          TIMERS
          18:35:02
1> 07:00:00 WAKE UP!
2> 08:15:00 LEAVE FOR TRAIN
3> 00:00:00
4> 16:45:00 WATCH DANGER-MOUSE
5> 00:00:00
6> 00:00:00
7> 00:00:00
8> 17:30:00 PHONE CYRIL
9> 00:00:00
10> 00:00:00
11> 00:00:00
12> 00:00:00
WAITING

```

Figure 1.3: Typical Display Taken from Timer.

Module 1.3.1: Initialisation

The main purpose of this module in the current program is to dimension the two arrays `TIMER` and `TIMERS`. `TIMER(11)` will hold the alarm times of up to 12 separate timers (numbering of arrays begins at zero, remember), while `TIMERS(11,20)` will hold up to 12 optional messages which may be tagged on to a particular alarm call. Note that in defining the length of the strings in a string array, numbering does *not* begin at zero, so that the maximum message length which `TIMERS` can contain is 20 characters, not 21 as the numbering of arrays in other respects might suggest.

Module 1.3.1: Lines 2000 – 2070

```

2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 PAPER 0 : INK 7 : CLS : CLS#0
2040 DIM timer(11), timer$(11,20)
2050 message$=""
2060 sounded=0
2070 END DEFine initialise

```

Module 1.3.2: Formatting the time

Throughout most of this program, the current time will be displayed on the screen. This module uses the QL's flexible time-handling to produce a string containing hours, minutes and seconds, in the format `HH:MM:SS`, for any given number of seconds.

Module 1.3.2: Lines 6000 – 6050

```

6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFine PROCedure extract_time (time)

```

```

6020 REMark *****
6030 temp_time$=DATE$(time)
6040 time#=temp_time$(13 TO)
6050 END DEFine extract_time

```

Commentary

Line 6030: `DATE$` has two functions. Used on its own, it produces a string containing the year, month, etc. Used in conjunction with an argument (a figure in brackets following it), it returns the date and time which would represent the number of seconds contained in the argument. Thus, if you enter `PRINT DATE$(1)`, you will see:

```
1961 Jan 01 00:00:01
```

or the first second of the period the QL is capable of dealing with. This facility can be used to bypass all kinds of calculations and discover the time represented by a number of seconds.

Line 6040: The time in hours, minutes and seconds is sliced out of the string which was extracted by means of `DATE$`.

Testing

Enter:

```
extract_time(1)[ENTER]
print time$
```

and you should see:

```
00:00:01
```

Module 1.3.3: Setting the time

A different module to the one used in the previous two programs. Rather than employing `ADATE` to adjust the hours, minutes and seconds of `DATE$` to the current time, this module makes use of `SDATE`, which specifies the complete set of figures for `DATE$`, ie year, month, day, hour, minute, second. The module consists of a series of loops used to ensure sensible figures are input, followed by an `SDATE` command. Note that the time is actually set when the user presses 'Y' to confirm the new time, so it is wise to enter the time a minute in advance and wait for the precise moment to confirm it.

If you feel it important to update the whole of the date, rather than simply the time, this module can be used to replace the time-setting modules in the two earlier programs.

Module 1.3.3: Lines 10000–10340

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine PROCedure set_time
10020 REMark *****
10030 REPEAT date_set
10040 CLS
10050 AT 1,12 : PRINT "CLOCK SETTING"
10060 REPEAT year
10070 AT 5,1 : INPUT "YEAR (1984-1999):";
      year
10080 IF year>=1984 AND year<=1999 THEN
      EXIT year
10090 END REPEAT year
10100 REPEAT month
10110 AT 7,1 : INPUT "MONTH (1-12):";month
10120 IF month>=1 AND month<=12 THEN EXIT
      month
10130 END REPEAT month
10140 REPEAT day
10150 AT 9,1 : INPUT "DAY (1-31):";day
10160 IF day>=0 AND day<=31 THEN EXIT day
10170 END REPEAT day
10180 REPEAT hour
10190 AT 11,1 : INPUT "HOUR (0-23):";hour
10200 IF hour >=0 AND hour <=23 THEN EXIT
      hour
10210 END REPEAT hour
10220 REPEAT minute
10230 AT 13,1 : INPUT "MINUTE (0-59):";
      minute
10240 IF minute>=0 AND minute<=59 THEN EXIT
      minute
10250 END REPEAT minute
10260 AT 15,1 : INPUT "ARE THESE CORRECT
      (Y/N)";Q$
10270 IF Q$="y" THEN EXIT date_set
10280 END REPEAT date_set
10290 SDATE year,month,day,hour,minute,0
10300 AT 17,1 : PRINT "DATE IS NOW: ";DATE$
10310 AT 19,1 : PRINT "press any key to
      continue"
10320 PRINT INKEY$(-1)
10330 CLS
10340 END DEFine set_time

```

Testing

Enter:

```
set__time[ENTER]
```

and respond correctly to the various prompts. The module tests itself in that the date printed out at the bottom of the screen represents the time you have set.

Module 1.3.4: Sampling the timers

This small module is an integral part of the program in that it allows the program to enter a waiting state during which the user can make an input, yet at the same time the program is constantly carrying on the work of sampling the 12 timers to see if the alarm should be sounded for any of them. We shall enter the module now, even though it will not be fully used until several later modules have been entered, because it is an essential subroutine for the menu module which follows.

Module 1.3.4: Lines 4000–4160

```

4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure waiting
4020 REMark *****
4030 REPEAT test
4040 FOR count=0 TO 11
4050 IF timer(count)<DATE AND timer(count)
      <>0
4060 current (timer(count))
4070 EXIT test
4080 END IF
4090 extract_time (DATE)
4100 AT 3,14
4110 PRINT time$
4120 t$=INKEY$
4130 IF t$<>"" AND t$<>CHR$(10) THEN EXIT
      test
4140 NEXT count
4150 END REPEAT test
4160 END DEFine waiting

```

Commentary

Lines 4030 – 4150: The object of this module is simply to wait — either for a timer to sound or for a key to be pressed. These two exit conditions can be found at lines 4070 and 4130.

Lines 4040 – 4140: This loop shuttles through the 12 timers repeatedly.

Lines 4050 – 4080: These lines are activated if a timer has been set and the time for an alarm to be sounded has arrived. Whether the time has come is easily discernible from the fact that the contents of the timer, held in one element of the array TIMER, are less than the contents of the system variable DATE, which holds the current time in seconds. The procedure CURRENT will be entered later — its purpose is to sound an alarm.

Lines 4090 – 4110: The current time is extracted from DATE\$ and printed on the centre of a line towards the top of the screen. Other displays in the program will be built around this.

Lines 4120 – 4130: These lines have the effect of sampling the keyboard and leaving the main loop of the module if a key is pressed. INKEY\$ with-

out a parameter attached does not interrupt program flow, it merely catches any key which is being pressed at the moment it is executed. Later on we shall use other forms of INKEY\$ to force programs to pause. Note that the WAITING procedure only ends if the key pressed is not CHR\$(10) — the ENTER key. The reason for this is that the program relies largely on one key entry for menus and other choices, using INKEY\$ rather than INPUT. This is necessary so that other processes, like sampling the timers, can go on while the program is waiting for the user — something that cannot happen with INPUT, which locks up the program until ENTER is pressed. Some people, however, find it difficult to remember that all they have to do is press a single key and press ENTER anyway. The filtering out of the ENTER key here helps to reduce the annoyance of choosing an option from the main program menu and then returning straight to that menu when the unnecessary ENTER is pressed.

Testing

Provided that you have initialised the program, enter:

waiting [ENTER]

and the QL should do just that, displaying the current time towards the top of the screen. The waiting state should carry on until you next press a key other than ENTER.

Module 1.3.5: The program menu

We now come to a new technique which will play a large part in the programs within this book — the 'menu'. In the programs which have led up to this one, the control of the program has been left to the program itself. Once run, a control module has taken over and dictated the flow of program execution until the user signifies that the program is to be terminated. This program, and many of those which follow, is different in that there is no single direction of program flow. The program presents a variety of possibilities to the user and it must be the user who, to a large extent, dictates what happens. This is done by means of a module known as the program menu, which presents the user with a list of the choices which the program provides and allows the user to specify which is to be acted upon. More complex programs later in the book will make use of several menus, each reflecting the variety of choices under one main heading. For the moment, however, we shall stick to the single menu required by this program.

Module 1.3.5: Lines 3000 – 3340

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure menu
```

```
3020 REMark *****
3030 REPEAT choice
3040   CLS
3050   AT 1,1 : PRINT "TIMER MAIN MENU"
3060   AT 5,1 : PRINT "commands available:"
3070   PRINT\,,"1) DISPLAY TIMERS"
3080   PRINT,"2) SET TIMER"
3090   PRINT,"3) BLANK SCREEN WAIT"
3100   PRINT,"4) STOP"
3110   REPEAT response
3120     AT 13,1 : PRINT "WHICH DO YOU
3130       REQUIRE:";
3140     FLASH 1
3150     PRINT "WAITING"
3160     FLASH 0
3170     waiting
3180     IF sounded=1
3190       sounded=0
3200       choice=0
3210     EXIT response
3220   END IF
3230   choice="0" & t$
3240   IF choice>=1 AND choice<=4
3250     EXIT response
3260   END IF
3270 END REPEAT response
3280 SELECT ON choice
3290   ON choice=1 : display
3300   ON choice=2 : set_timer
3310   ON choice=3 : blank
3320   ON choice=4 : RETURN
3330 END SELECT
3340 END DEFine menu
```

Commentary

Lines 3030 and 3330: This loop will continue to display the menu every time execution returns to this module, until the user inputs the number 4. The program will then terminate.

Lines 3060 – 3100: The list of the program options which will become available as subsequent modules are entered.

Lines 3110 – 3260: This loop will repeat the prompt at line 3120 until the user makes a valid input which the program can deal with.

Lines 3120 – 3160: The WAITING procedure that you have already entered is used to accept a one-key input from the user. To help remind the user that only a single keypress is needed, the word 'WAITING' is printed on the screen with FLASH set.

Lines 3170 – 3210: These lines refer to action which will be taken if an alarm has been sounded, as indicated by the value of the variable

SOUNDED. The variable is reset so that it can be used again, the value of CHOICE (the user's input) set to 0 so that the program will do nothing, and the whole menu printed again, since it has been erased by the alarm call.

Lines 3220 – 3250: T\$, which is the key pressed by the user during the WAITING routine, has '0' added to the front. The reason for this is that we are about to treat T\$ as a number, under the name CHOICE. If the user has inadvertently pressed a non-numeric key, this process could either crash the program or, if the key pressed is the name of a single letter variable, result in a spurious value being stored in CHOICE. Adding zero to the beginning of T\$ makes no difference if the input was a number, but results in the return of zero if the key pressed was anything else. The loop is terminated if the CHOICE entered was a valid one, ie in the range 1 – 4.

Lines 3270 – 3340: SELECT is used to allocate work amongst the program according to the selection made by the user.

Testing

If you now enter:

menu [ENTER]

you should see the menu displayed. It should not accept any invalid inputs, but the only one of the options available to you is 'stop', which terminates the program.

Module 1.3.6: Displaying the current timer settings

The purpose of this module is to print out in an orderly way the times for which the 12 timers are currently set. At the moment, since we have not entered the module which allows us to set the timer values, each timer will be displayed as zero.

Module 1.3.6: Lines 11000 – 11160

```
11000 REMark *****
11010 DEFine PROCedure display
11020 REMark *****
11030 CLS
11040 AT 1,15
11050 PRINT "TIMERS"
11060 AT 5,0
11070 FOR count=0 TO 11
11080   extract_time (timer(count))
11090   IF count<9 THEN PRINT " ";
11100   PRINT count+1;";"!time$!timer$(count)
11110 NEXT count
11120 FLASH 1
```

```
11130 PRINT "WAITING"
11140 FLASH 0
11150 waiting
11160 END DEFine display
```

Commentary

Lines 11070 – 11110: This loop prints out the contents of the array TIMER and TIMER\$. The contents of TIMER, which gives the time for each timer in seconds, is processed by the EXTRACT__TIME module to extract the time in hours, minutes and seconds and it is in this format that it is printed, together with any message stored in TIMER\$.

Lines 11120 – 11150: Like the menu, this module relies on WAITING to put it into a waiting state until a key is pressed, following which the program returns to the menu.

Testing

Type:

display [ENTER]

You should see the times for the 12 timers displayed, though the time for each will be '00-00-00' and there will be no messages alongside each one since none have been entered. The flashing 'WAITING' will be displayed at the bottom of the screen and the current time underneath the program title.

Module 1.3.7: Calculating timer settings

Now that we can display the timers we shall enter the two modules which allow the user to set them. The current module is primarily designed to accept a time in hours and minutes which will be used by the next module to set a timer.

Module 1.3.7: Lines 7000 – 7210

```
7000 REMark *****
7010 DEFine PROCedure create_time
7020 REMark *****
7030 REPEAT countdown
7040   INPUT "COUNTDOWN (y/n):";down$
7050   IF down$="y" OR down$="Y" OR down$="n"
       OR down$="N" THEN EXIT countdown
7060 END REPEAT countdown
7070 REPEAT hour
7080   AT 10,0
7090   INPUT "HOUR:";hour
7100   IF down$="n" OR down$="N"
       IF hour>=0 AND hour<=47 THEN EXIT hour
```

```

7120 END IF
7130 IF down$="Y" OR down$="Y" THEN EXIT hour
7140 END REPEAT hour
7150 REPEAT minute
7160 AT 12,0
7170 INPUT "MINUTE: ";minute
7180 IF minute>=0 AND minute<=59 THEN EXIT
    minute
7190 END REPEAT minute
7200 time=hour*3600+minute*60
7210 END DEFINE create_time

```

Commentary

Lines 7030 – 7060: Setting of timers can be done in two different ways. Either a time can be input at which the timer will go off (eg input 12.00 and the timer goes off at twelve o'clock) or a period can be specified after which the timer will sound (eg input 1 hour and the timer will sound after one hour). These lines ask the user to specify whether the time to be input is to be used for a count-down or simply as a time of day.

Lines 7070 – 7140: If what is being input is a time of day, then the hour figure can only be in the range zero to 47. This may sound like a rather strange range to impose, but it is a simple way of allowing the user to specify whether the alarm is to go off today or tomorrow. If the alarm is intended for 12.00 and the time is already 19.00, there is no point in entering 12 hours, no minutes as the time, since the alarm would go off immediately. For dates on the following day, simply add 24 hours to the time expressed in terms of the 24-hour clock, so that 12.00 the following day would be entered as 36. If the figure is to be the basis for a count-down timer, no limit is imposed.

Line 7200: The time input is translated into seconds.

Testing

Type:

create_time [ENTER]

In answer to the prompt, specify that you do not want a count-down timer and you should then be prompted for the hours and minutes. If you input 10 hours and 11 minutes, the resulting value of the variable TIME should be 36660, and you can print out TIME to check this.

Module 1.3.8: Setting the timers

Now that we can display the state of the timers and translate an input into a time value expressed in seconds, we can proceed to the module which allows the user to specify the settings for the 12 timers. Note that this

module uses INPUT to obtain the three items of data it requires, so while the module is operating the timers themselves are not being sampled and any timer due to give an alarm will not sound until this module has been completed.

Module 1.3.8: Lines 8000 – 8310

```

8000 REMARK *****
8010 DEFINE PROCEDURE set_timer
8020 REMARK *****
8030 CLS
8040 AT 1,13
8050 PRINT "SET TIMER"
8060 REPEAT response
8070 AT 5,0
8080 INPUT "which timer (1-12): ";tnum
8090 IF tnum>=1 AND tnum<=12 THEN EXIT
    response
8100 END REPEAT response
8110 tnum=tnum-1
8120 AT 8,0
8130 create_time
8140 IF down$="Y" OR down$="Y"
8150 time=DATE+time
8160 ELSE
8170 days=3600*24*(INT (DATE/(3600*24)))
8180 time=days+time
8190 END IF
8200 AT 14,0
8210 INPUT "message: ";message$
8220 REPEAT response
8230 AT 16,0
8240 INPUT "Is this correct (Y/N): ";Q$
8250 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="Y" OR Q$="N" OR Q$="n"
    THEN EXIT response
8260 END REPEAT response
8270 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="Y"
8280 timer(tnum)=time
8290 timer$(tnum)=message$
8300 END IF
8310 END DEFINE set_timer

```

Commentary

Lines 8060 – 8110: The user is invited to input a timer number in the range 1 – 12. Note that since the array runs from zero to 11, this value has to be reduced by one.

Lines 8140 – 8190: If the user has specified a count-down timer, all that needs to be done is to add the time input by the user (stored in seconds in the variable TIME) to the contents of the system variable DATE (the current time and date expressed in seconds). If the time input is intended simply as a straight time, these lines take the value of DATE and slice off the part

which refers to hours and minutes, so that the number of seconds up to the start of the current day is stored in DAYS. To this is then added the number of seconds which make up the time input by the user. Thus what is eventually stored is not simply a figure representing hours and minutes but a record of the total number of seconds since January 1st 1961 up to the specified time on the current day or the day following.

Lines 8210 – 8300: A short message (up to 20 characters) can be attached to any timer when it is set. These lines accept the message, confirm all the details and then store time and message in the arrays TIMER and TIMER\$. The place in the array is dictated by the user's choice, recorded in the variable TNUM.

Testing

Provided that you have previously initialised and set the time, you should at this stage be able to test the module by typing:

menu [ENTER]

When you have the menu up, specify option 2 and input:

1, Y, 0, 1 and TEST

in response to the five prompts — ie timer 1 to be set, (Y)es to a count-down timer, period no hours and one minute, with the message 'TEST' attached. The program should now return to the menu. Now specify option 1 to display the timers and you should find that timer 0 has been given a value somewhere less than a minute ahead of the current time (how far ahead will depend on how quick you have been) plus the label 'TEST'. Don't bother waiting for the alarm to sound as we have not yet entered the module to achieve that.

Module 1.3.9: Sounding the alarm

We now have all the working elements of the program with the exception that the timers cannot yet announce themselves with an alarm call. This module and the next add that final touch, with the current module producing the sound and the next one connecting the alarm to the rest of the system.

Module 1.3.9: Lines 5000 – 5270

```
5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFine PROCedure current (time)
5020 REMark *****
5030 CLS
5040 now=DATE
5050 extract_time (time)
```

```
5060 FLASH 1
5070 AT 5,14 : PRINT time$
5080 FLASH 0
5090 AT 8,18-LEN(timer$(count))/2
5100 PRINT timer$(count)
5110 AT 19,1
5120 PRINT "press any key to continue"
5130 REPEAT sound
5140 BEEP 0,10
5150 FOR delay=1 TO 500
5160 NEXT delay
5170 BEEP 0,20
5180 FOR delay=1 TO 500
5190 NEXT delay
5200 BEEP
5210 t$=INKEY$
5220 IF DATE>now+60 THEN EXIT sound
5230 IF t$<>" " THEN EXIT sound
5240 END REPEAT sound
5250 timer(count)=0
5260 timer$(count)=""
5265 sounded=1
5270 END DEFine current
```

Commentary

Line 5040: The current time is stored in the variable NOW. This will be used later in the module to determine whether the alarm has been sounded for one minute.

Lines 5050 – 5080: This module is called by one you have already entered, WAITING. That module has already extracted a time from one of the timers and sent it to this module in the form of the parameter TIME. These lines call up EXTRACT_TIME to translate the time into a string. The result is placed on the screen in flashing letters.

Lines 5090 – 5100: If there is a message in the corresponding line of the array TIMER\$, it is printed in the centre of the screen.

Lines 5130 – 5240: This loop sounds two notes, rather like a film version of the siren on a French police car, for a period of 60 seconds. The lines from 5140 to 5200 sound two notes with a short delay between them, then turn the sound off. Tests are then made to see whether a key is being pressed or whether it is more than 60 seconds since the variable NOW was set. If either of these tests is positive, the loop which sounds the alarm ends.

Lines 5250 – 5270: Having finished with the alarm, the value of the timer is set to 0 and any associated message cleared. The variable SOUNDED is set to 1 as an indication to the menu module that the screen has been cleared while it was waiting for an input.

Testing

Type:

menu [ENTER]

and specify a count-down timer with a period of a minute. The result should be that at the end of the minute the alarm should sound for a period of approximately one more minute. If you wish, you can set another timer and this time cut off the alarm by pressing a key — the alarm may not stop instantly due to the fact that the notes and the timing loop have to finish. Finally, you might like to check that the alarm still sounds when you have the 12 timers displayed on the screen using menu option 1.

Module 1.3.10: Blanking the screen

The whole purpose of this program is that it should be left running in the background so that it can act as a timer system. Leaving the QL switched on to achieve this will do it no harm at all, but leaving the television set switched on and displaying the same screen for long periods of time may eventually cause some of the brighter parts of what is displayed to become slightly etched upon the screen so that they appear as permanent ghosts over whatever the screen is showing. (Don't panic about this, it's not something that's going to happen just because you happen to leave the QL and TV switched on for a few hours by mistake — we are talking about continual use of the same screen design over a long period).

To overcome this possible problem, the program has built into it a screen protection module which blanks the screen and then displays a short message in flashing letters. Since flashing letters are not permanently displayed on the screen, they will not cause etching on the screen in the same way as normal lettering.

While the screen is blanked, the timers are constantly being sampled by means of the previous module. Any alarms which arise will be sounded in the normal way.

Module 1.3.10: Lines 9000–9120

```

9000 REMark *****
9010 DEFine PROCedure blank
9020 REMark *****
9030 REPeat blank_loop
9040   CLS
9050   FLASH 1
9060   AT 9,15
9070   PRINT "TIMER"
9080   waiting
9090   FLASH 0
9100   IF t#<>" THEN EXIT blank_loop
9110 END REPeat blank_loop
9120 END DEFine blank

```

Testing

Set up one or two timers for short periods and then call up the blank screen state from the menu. Though you cannot see the state of the timers until they expire, you should find that alarms are sounded in the normal way.

Module 1.3.11: The control module

Finally, the control module, which ties together what you have entered.

Module 1.3.11: Lines 1000–1070

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark control loop
1020 REMark *****
1030   initialise
1040   set_time
1050   menu
1060   CLS
1070   STOP

```

Testing

All the functions which you have already entered should now be available when you run the program.

PROGRAM 1.4: EVENT

Program function

The final program in this chapter of experiments with time is fairly unusual in that it seeks to turn the QL into a stopwatch. Of course the accuracy of a microcomputer is not to be compared with that of specialist watches, but the computer does have some advantages in that it can keep a record of the times it has produced, perform calculations on them, and so on. The current program is designed to time one of a series of events, to display the series of times, with or without an identifying message attached and, for each event, to calculate the period since the previous one. It can also, on request, print out the list of times so that a hard copy can be kept.

New topics introduced in the course of this chapter:

- 1) The use of the SER1 port for printed output from programs.

Module 1.4.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module. The variables will be discussed during the course of the commentary on the program.

```

18:47:46 (00:00:01)
18:47:47 (00:00:01)
18:47:49 (00:00:02) LORRY
18:47:53 (00:00:04)
18:47:54 (00:00:01)
18:47:56 (00:00:02)
18:47:59 (00:00:03) BUS
18:48:06 (00:00:07)
18:48:07 (00:00:01)
18:48:11 (00:00:04) LORRY
18:48:14 (00:00:03)
18:48:15 (00:00:01) LORRY
18:48:21 (00:00:06)
18:48:22 (00:00:01)
18:48:24 (00:00:02)
18:48:24 (00:00:00)
18:48:24 (00:00:00)
18:48:26 (00:00:02) TANK

```

Figure 1.4: Output of Event being used to Time Traffic, with Heavy Vehicles Marked.

Module 1.4.1: Lines 2000 – 2060

```

2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 PAPER 0 : INK 7 : CLS : CLS#0
2040 time1=DATE
2050 printer=0
2060 END DEFine initialise

```

Module 1.4.2: Setting the time

The last in the series of time-setting modules. This one is the longest but, paradoxically, the easiest to use. To the module in the last program has been added the option to choose whether or not to reset the existing time. Once the time has been set, a simple 'N' saves all the trouble of entering everything again.

Module 1.4.2: Lines 3000 – 3370

```

3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure set_time
3020 REMark *****
3030 REPEAT date_set
3040   CLS
3050   AT 1,1 : PRINT "DATE IS NOW: ";DATE#
3060   AT 3,1 : INPUT "Do you wish to reset
    date (Y/N)";:Q#
3070   IF Q#<>"Y" AND Q#<>"N" THEN RETURN

```

```

3080   CLS
3090   AT 1,12 : PRINT "CLOCK SETTING"
3100   REPEAT year
3110     AT 5,1 : INPUT "YEAR (1984-1999)";:year
3120     IF year>=1984 AND year<=1999 THEN EXIT
    year
3130   END REPEAT year
3140   REPEAT month
3150     AT 7,1 : INPUT "MONTH (1-12)";:month
3160     IF month>=1 AND month<=12 THEN EXIT
    month
3170   END REPEAT month
3180   REPEAT day
3190     AT 9,1 : INPUT "DAY (1-31)";:day
3200     IF day>=0 AND day<=31 THEN EXIT day
3210   END REPEAT day
3220   REPEAT hour
3230     AT 11,1 : INPUT "HOUR (0-23)";:hour
3240     IF hour >=0 AND hour <=23 THEN EXIT
    hour
3250   END REPEAT hour
3260   REPEAT minute
3270     AT 13,1 : INPUT "MINUTE (0-59)";:minute
3280     IF minute>=0 AND minute<=59 THEN EXIT
    minute
3290   END REPEAT minute
3300   AT 15,1 : INPUT "ARE THESE CORRECT
    (Y/N)";:Q#
3310   IF Q#="Y" THEN EXIT date_set
3320   END REPEAT date_set
3330   SDATE year,month,day,hour,minute,0
3340   AT 17,1 : PRINT "DATE IS NOW: ";DATE#
3350   AT 19,1 : PRINT "press any key to continue"
3360   PRINT INKEY#(-1)
3370 END DEFine set_time

```

Module 1.4.3: Waiting for input

This module is equivalent to the WAIT procedure in the previous program in that it creates a waiting state. In addition, it is capable of recognising if the user is asking for the printer to be connected or for the program to be terminated.

Module 1.4.3: Lines 4000 – 4200

```

4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure wait
4020 REMark *****
4030 message$=""
4040 REPEAT waiting
4050   t#=INKEY#
4060   IF t#<>" "
4070     time_values
4080     IF t#=CHR$(10)

```

```

4090 INPUT#0, "MESSAGE (<=15 CHARS):";
    message$
4100 IF LEN(message$)>15 THEN message$=
    message$(1 TO 15)
4110 CLS #0
4120 END IF
4130 IF t$="p" OR t$="P"
4140 printer=ABS(printer-1)
4150 ELSE
4160 EXIT waiting
4170 END IF
4180 END IF
4190 END REPEAT waiting
4200 END DEFINE wait

```

Commentary

Line 4030: This string will be used to store any message associated with a particular event timing.

Lines 4070 – 4110: If the key pressed is ENTER, then the user is prompted on the command lines at the bottom of the screen to input a short message to accompany the event time, the command lines then being cleared again.

Lines 4130 – 4140: If the key pressed is the letter P, then the value of the variable PRINTER is toggled between zero and one. It's worth taking note of this simple routine as it represents the classic way of shuttling a variable between two values. If you have a variable X and you want to shuttle it backwards and forwards between values V1 and V2 (where V1 is the lower), the format is:

$X = V1 + V2 - X$

but, since our lower value is zero, it is simplified to:

$X = V2 - X$

Lines 4150 – 4170: To arrive at this point, the key pressed must have been anything but the letter P. The result is that the time values are updated by the next module and the waiting state terminated.

Testing

Ensure that the program is initialised, then type:

wait [ENTER]

and the QL should go into the waiting state. If you press the P key, nothing should visibly happen. If you press [ENTER], you should be prompted for a message and the wait terminated. Any other key simply terminates the procedure.

Module 1.4.4: Extracting time values

This module obtains all the information necessary for printing out the current time and the period between events.

Module 1.4.4: Lines 5000 – 5090

```

5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFINE PROCEDURE time_values
5020 REMark *****
5030 time2=time1
5040 time1=DATE
5050 now$=DATE$
5060 period=time1-time2
5070 time$=DATE$(period)
5080 time$=time$(13 TO)
5090 END DEFINE time_values

```

Commentary

Lines 5030 – 5040: The last time recorded is shifted over to the variable TIME2 before the current time is taken into TIME1.

Line 5050: The string NOW\$ will be used for printing out the current time.

Lines 5060 – 5070: The difference between TIME1 and TIME2 is obtained and translated into a time format by use of DATES.

Testing

Provided that you have initialised the program, type:

```

time__values [ENTER]
print time$,now$[ENTER]

```

You should find that NOW\$ roughly represents the current time, while TIME\$ will represent the period since the program was last initialised and TIME1 set equal to DATE.

Module 1.4.5: Printing the results

This module prints out the results of the previous calculations, either on the screen alone, or to the screen and printer if this has been specified.

Module 1.4.5: Lines 6000 – 6090

```

6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFINE PROCEDURE print_values
6020 REMark *****
6030 PRINT now$(13 TO 20)!!(" ";time$;"")!!
    message$
6040 IF printer=1
6050 OPEN#9,ser1

```



```

6060 PRINT#9,now$(13 TO 20)!!(";time$;")!!
      message$
6070 CLOSE#9
6080 END IF
6090 END DEFine print_values

```

Commentary

Line 6030: The time at which the key was pressed, the period since the last event and any associated message are printed on the same line.

Lines 6040 – 6080: These lines open a channel of communication with the port on the back of the QL labelled SER1. This port is designed so that the QL can communicate with a printer which operates according to what is known as the RS232C protocol — and make sure your printer *does* work with the QL before you buy it! Once the channel has been opened, items to be printed which are sent along that channel by including the channel number after the PRINT command will end up being output to the printer rather than to the screen. In the case of this module the channel is opened and closed for each item to ensure that it is properly closed when the program terminates. It could equally well be opened at the beginning of the program and closed at the end provided that no other use is being made of the SER1 port. Note that if you don't have a printer connected to the SER1 port and you call up the printer, the program will lock up.

Testing

If you performed the test on the previous module, just type:

```
print_values [ENTER]
```

and you should see what you previously printed out as NOW\$ and TIME\$, neatly formatted. If the variable PRINTER was equal to 1, and a printer connected, the output will also go to the printer.

Module 1.4.6: The control module

The final touch, as always, is the control module, which ties the whole program together.

Module 1.4.6: Lines 1000 – 1120

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark control loop
1020 REMark *****
1030 initialise
1040 set_time
1050 CLS
1060 REPEAT control
1070 wait

```

```

1080 IF t$=CHR$(27) THEN EXIT control
1090 print_values
1100 END REPEAT control
1110 PRINT #0,"Program terminated"
1120 STOP

```

Commentary

Lines 1080 and 1110: One extra touch which isn't apparent from the rest of the program is that, if you pressed the ESCape key while in the waiting loop, the program will stop, printing the message 'Program terminated' on the command lines at the bottom of the screen.

Conclusion

There are a number of lessons to be learned from the programs in this chapter, not least that the uses of your QL are only limited by your imagination. But perhaps the most important lesson you can learn, if you look back over the programs, is just how easy the design of programs becomes when everything is contained in neat modules which can be transferred from one program to the next. With its easy-to-use MERGE command and the ability to save parts of programs, the QL cries out to be used in this way. Once you have built up a sufficient library of useful routines you will find that much of your programming becomes like fitting together a jigsaw puzzle, except that the completed puzzle will, at least sometimes, be more useful.

CHAPTER 2

Son et Lumière

In this chapter we turn to a series of programs which will allow you to put some of the QL's graphical abilities to use and, in addition, to make the most of the rather confusing sound commands.

The programs included in this chapter are:

DESIGNER: A tool which allows line drawings far larger than a single screen to be constructed, manipulated and displayed.

3-D GRAPH: Using turtle graphics to produce a clear and attractive display for complex figures.

SCREEN: Copies the contents of the screen to a printer.

CHARACTERS: Designs and stores your own customised character sets.

SOUND DEMO: A simple routine to permit experiments with the sound parameters.

MUSIC: Allows complex tunes to be input in a comprehensible form and played.

PROGRAM 2.1: DESIGNER

Program function

No doubt we have all seen the impressive displays created by what is known as CAD (computer aided design) software. With deft touches, the engineer adds lines and shapes to a complex design, or erases those which already exist. In a limited kind of way, Designer is intended to mimic that kind of capability. While clearly not as sophisticated, it will allow you to create complex designs which are far larger than a single screen, using the television screen as a moving window to examine parts or shrinking the whole area down so that it can be viewed in its entirety. Lines, circles and boxes can be added at will or deleted, and the whole design stored on microdrive for later use.

New concepts introduced in this program include:

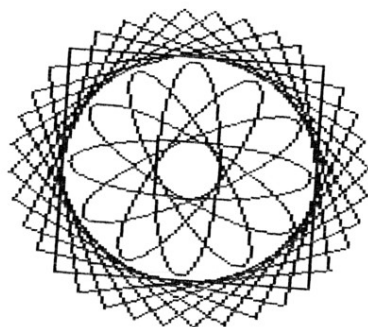


Figure 2.1: Screen Dump from Designer.

- 1) Graphics commands LINE, CIRCLE and SCALE.
- 2) Starting a program without clearing variables.
- 3) A user-defined flashing cursor in hi-res.
- 4) Storing and retrieving data on microdrives.

Module 2.1.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module.

Module 2.1.1: Lines 2000 – 2090

```

2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFINE PROCEDURE initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 INK 7
2040 DIM a(1000,8)
2050 size=2 : screen=100
2060 cx=83 : cy=50
2070 item=0
2080 SCALE 100,0,0
2090 END DEFINE initialise

```

Commentary

Line 2040: The array A will be used to store details of the lines and shapes to be drawn.

Line 2050: The variable SIZE will record the size of the flashing cursor. This will vary with the scale at which the design is being viewed.

Line 2060: The original coordinates of the cursor (cursor X and cursor Y).

Line 2070: The number of lines or shapes contained within the drawing.

Line 2080: Later program sections will allow the design to be viewed at different degrees of enlargement and in different sections. To begin with we use the normal scaling of the machine, with 100 units on the horizontal axis and the picture starting at position 0,0.

Module 2.1.2: A flashing cursor

In any design program, one of the first necessities is that the user should know where the current drawing position is. This is usually achieved by means of a cursor of some kind, marking the current position on the screen. The cursor for this program consists of a small flashing cross which can be moved over the design using the cursor control keys, without affecting the contents of the screen.

Module 2.1.2: Lines 3000 – 3150

```

3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFINE PROCEDURE cross
3020 REMark *****
3030 OVER -1
3040 REPEAT draw
3050 LINE cx-size,cy TO cx+size,cy
3060 LINE cx,cy-size TO cx,cy+size
3070 FOR delay=1 TO 10 : NEXT delay
3080 LINE cx-size,cy TO cx+size,cy
3090 LINE cx,cy-size TO cx,cy+size
3100 FOR delay=1 TO 10 : NEXT delay
3110 t$=INKEY$
3120 IF t$<>" " THEN EXIT draw
3130 END REPEAT draw
3140 OVER 0
3150 END DEFINE cross

```

Commentary

Lines 3040 – 3130: These lines draw two short lines, to a length of SIZE, at right angles, crossing at the current drawing position. The cursor is drawn with OVER set in such a way that it reverses any pixels over which it passes. Drawing the cursor twice erases it and reinstates the screen to the position which existed before it was drawn. The two DELAY loops ensure that the timing is such that the cursor appears to be flashing rather than merely flickering.

Lines 3110 – 3120: These lines ensure that the cursor will continue to flash until a key is pressed. Dealing with the input is the job of the next module.

Testing

Type:

```
initialise[ENTER]
cross[ENTER]
```

The screen should clear and you should see the small flashing cursor appear in the centre. Pressing any key should make the cross disappear and terminate the module.

Module 2.1.3: Input of commands

Having given ourselves a flashing cursor and the ability to detect the user pressing a key, the current module allocates work among the various parts of the program when a key is pressed. Its correct functioning can only be tested when the subsequent module, the short control module, is added. Most of the single commands mentioned in the commentary will not, of course, become operative until later modules are added.

Module 2.1.3: Lines 4000–4270

```
4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure analyse_key
4020 REMark *****
4030 IF t$=CHR$(192) THEN cx=cx-1
4040 IF t$=CHR$(196) THEN cx=cx-10*screen/100
4050 IF t$=CHR$(200) THEN cx=cx+1
4060 IF t$=CHR$(204) THEN cx=cx+10*screen/100
4070 IF t$=CHR$(208) THEN cy=cy+1
4080 IF t$=CHR$(212) THEN cy=cy+10*screen/100
4090 IF t$=CHR$(216) THEN cy=cy-1
4100 IF t$=CHR$(220) THEN cy=cy-10*screen/100
4110 IF t$="1"
4120   xl=cx
4130   yl=cy
4140 END IF
4150 IF t$="!"
4160   cx=cx+1
4170   cy=yl
4180 END IF
4190 IF t$="l" OR t$="L" THEN line_draw
4200 IF t$="c" OR t$="C" THEN circle_draw
4210 IF t$="b" OR t$="B" THEN box
4220 IF t$="d" OR t$="D" THEN remove
4230 IF t$="s" OR t$="S" THEN scaling
4240 IF t$="m" OR t$="M" THEN store
4250 IF t$=CHR$(27) THEN STOP
4260 CLS #0
4270 END DEFine analyse_key
```

Commentary

Lines 4030–4100: The character codes given here are those of the cursor keys. Pressing one of the cursor arrows alters the value of CX or CY, thus moving the cursor. Using the shifted cursor keys moves the cursor 10 screen positions, regardless of the scale at which the design is being viewed.

Lines 4110–4140: Input of 'I' defines the end of a line or shape to be drawn.

Lines 4150–4180: Input of '!' moves the cursor immediately to the position defined by pressing 1.

Line 4190: Input of 'L' draws a line between the points defined by the pressing of 1 and the current position of the cursor.

Line 4200: Input of 'C' results in the drawing of a circle whose circumference will touch points 1 and the current cursor position and whose centre will lie halfway between them.

Line 4210: Input of 'B' draws a box whose upper lefthand corner is defined by 1 and bottom righthand corner by the current cursor position.

Line 4220: Input of 'D' puts the program into the mode where individual lines can be deleted.

Line 4230: Input of 'S' allows the user to change the scale or position from which the design is viewed.

Line 4240: Input of 'M' stores the design on microdrive.

Line 4250: Pressing ESCape stops the program.

Module 2.1.4: The control module

The short control module needs to be entered at this point so that the cursor move function can be tested and later modules tested as they are entered. Note that the module makes provision for the recall of data from microdrives — this will be discussed in full when the relevant modules are entered. In addition, provision is made for the user to specify whether the program is to clear its variables or not.

Module 2.1.4: Lines 1000–1140

```
1000 REMark *****
1010 DEFine PROCedure do (fresh)
1020 REMark *****
1030 CLS : CLS #0 : OVER 0
1040 IF fresh THEN initialise
1050 CLS #0
1060 INPUT #0,"Load from Microdrive (y/n): ";q$
```

```

1070 IF q#="y" OR q#="Y"
1080   recall
1090 END IF
1100 REPEAT x
1110   cross
1120   analyse_key
1130 END REPEAT x
1140 END DEFINE do

```

Commentary

Lines 1010 and 1040: The argument attached to DO is used to determine whether the initialisation module will be called up. If the command to start the program is DO 1, the variables will be cleared, while if it is DO 0, they will be left intact and any existing design may be retrieved.

Testing

Start the program with DO 1 and you should find that you are able to move the flashing cursor around by means of the cursor control keys. None of the other program functions will yet be available.

Module 2.1.5: Drawing a line

The simplest kind of addition which can be made to the design is the drawing of a line between points 1 and 2. Like all the drawing modules, this one draws the line with OVER set, then gives the user the opportunity to confirm the addition before it is finalised. In a crowded design, adding the line with OVER set will erase any inked pixels over which the line passes. This is rectified when the line is confirmed or when it is erased.

Module 2.1.5: Lines 5000–5130

```

5000 REMARK *****
5010 DEFINE PROCEDURE line_draw
5020 REMARK *****
5030 OVER -1
5040 LINE x1,y1 TO cx,cy
5050 INPUT #0,"CONFIRM (Y/N):";q#
5060 IF q#="Y" OR q#="y"
5070   OVER 0
5080   type=1
5090   record
5100 END IF
5110 LINE x1,y1 TO cx,cy
5120 OVER 0
5130 END DEFINE line_draw

```

Testing

Enter the following lines which will form part of a later module:

```

8000 DEF PROCrecord
8350 END DEFrecord

```

Now run the program and immediately press 1 to define one end of a line. Now move the cursor and press 'L' (or 'I'). You should see a line drawn between the two points and be asked to confirm it. If you do confirm it, the flashing cursor will return. If you do not confirm it, the line should be erased before the cursor returns.

Module 2.1.6: Drawing a circle

This module is, in principle, no different from the last, with a shape being drawn and confirmed by the user. Apart from the two defined points, however, one further piece of information is required, namely the rotation of the circle to be drawn — since it may not be a pure circle but an ellipse of some kind.

Module 2.1.6: Lines 6000–6180

```

6000 REMARK *****
6010 DEFINE PROCEDURE circle_draw
6020 REMARK *****
6030 OVER -1
6040 ox=(x1+cx)/2
6050 oy=(y1+cy)/2
6060 ra=ABS(cy-y1)/2
6070 e=ABS(cx-x1)/(ABS(cy-y1)+1)
6080 INPUT #0,"ROTATION (0-360):";ro
6090 CIRCLE ox,oy,ra,e,RAD(ro)
6100 INPUT #0,"CONFIRM (Y/N):";q#
6110 IF q#="Y" OR q#="y"
6120   OVER 0
6130   type=2
6140   record
6150 END IF
6160 CIRCLE ox,oy,ra,e,RAD(ro)
6170 OVER 0
6180 END DEFINE circle_draw

```

Commentary

Lines 6040–6050: The origin of the circle is discovered by adding the X and Y coordinates of points 1 and 2 and dividing by two, thus finding a point halfway in between.

Lines 6060–6070: The QL works, for the radius of its CIRCLE command, on the Y axis, so half the distance between the two Y coordinates is calculated. Any difference between the distance between the Y coordinates and the X coordinates will be used to supply the 'eccentricity' of the circle, the degree to which it will appear stretched or squashed horizontally.

Line 6080: Having defined the shape, the circle command also requires a figure for the rotation of that shape. This is input in degrees and translated into radians using RAD.

Testing

You should now be able to call up the circle command with 'C' while the program is running.

Module 2.1.7: Drawing a box

The final shape which the program is capable of drawing is a simple rectangle, with its opposite corners at points 1 and 2. This module is slightly more complex than the previous ones since there is no built-in command for the shape and, in addition, I have included provision for it to be rotated.

Module 2.1.7: Lines 7000 – 7260

```

7000 REMark *****
7010 DEFine PROCedure box:
7020 REMark *****
7030 OVER -1
7040 ox=(x1+cx)/2
7050 oy=(y1+cy)/2
7060 INPUT #0,"ROTATION (0-360): ";ro
7070 ro=RAD(ro)
7080 rx1=ox+(x1-ox)*COS(ro)+(y1-oy)*SIN(ro)
7090 ry1=oy+(y1-oy)*COS(ro)-(x1-ox)*SIN(ro)
7100 rx2=ox+(cx-ox)*COS(ro)+(y1-oy)*SIN(ro)
7110 ry2=oy+(y1-oy)*COS(ro)-(cx-ox)*SIN(ro)
7120 rx3=ox+(cx-ox)*COS(ro)+(cy-oy)*SIN(ro)
7130 ry3=oy+(cy-oy)*COS(ro)-(cx-ox)*SIN(ro)
7140 rx4=ox+(x1-ox)*COS(ro)+(cy-oy)*SIN(ro)
7150 ry4=oy+(cy-oy)*COS(ro)-(x1-ox)*SIN(ro)
7160 LINE rx1,ry1 TO rx2,ry2 TO rx3,ry3 TO
      rx4,ry4 TO rx1,ry1
7170 INPUT #0,"CONFIRM (Y/N):";q#
7180 IF q#="Y" OR q#="y"
7190 OVER 0
7200 type=3
7210 record
7220 END IF
7230 LINE rx1,ry1 TO rx2,ry2 TO rx3,ry3 TO
      rx4,ry4 TO rx1,ry1
7240 OVER 0
7250 CLS #0
7260 END DEFine box

```

Commentary

Lines 7040 – 7050: Because we are going to supply the option of rotating the rectangle, its centre has to be found in the same way as for the circle.

Lines 7080 – 7150: The formulae for rotating one point around another are as follows:

$$X2 = XO + XD * \cos \text{ANGLE} + YD * \sin \text{ANGLE}$$

$$Y2 = YO + YD * \cos \text{ANGLE} - XD * \sin \text{ANGLE}$$

X2 AND Y2 are the X and Y coordinates which result from rotating the point X,Y.

XO and YO are the coordinates around which the point is being rotated.

XD and YD are the distances of X and Y from XO and YO respectively.

ANGLE is the angle through which the point defined by X and Y is being rotated.

The basic rectangle, unrotated, will have corners of X1/Y1, X2/Y1, X2/Y2 and X1/Y2. Looking at the lines and comparing them with the formulae above, you should be able to see that they provide the rotated coordinates for the four corner points.

Testing

You should now be able to press B, define a rectangle and rotate it at will, in the same way as a circle.

Module 2.1.8: Recording a design

A program like this one is little use for anything but some passing fun unless the design being worked on can be recorded in some way. In our case, recording the design in an array will later allow us both to store the data on microdrive and to delete individual lines. Lines and shapes are all recorded by calling this module as they are entered, which is why we earlier had to enter the two lines which begin and end this module before tests could be made.

Module 2.1.8: Lines 8000 – 8350

```

8000 REMark *****
8010 DEFine PROCedure record
8020 REMark *****
8030 IF item=1001
8040 PRINT #0, "NO ROOM FOR MORE LINES"
8050 t# = INKEY#(-1)
8060 RETURN
8070 END IF
8080 IF type=1
8090 a(item,0)=type
8100 a(item,1)=x1
8110 a(item,2)=y1
8120 a(item,3)=cx
8130 a(item,4)=cy
8140 END IF
8150 IF type=2
8160 a(item,0)=type
8170 a(item,1)=ox
8180 a(item,2)=oy
8190 a(item,3)=ra
8200 a(item,4)=e

```

```

8210      a(item,5)=ro
8220    END IF
8230    IF type=3
8240      a(item,0)=type
8250      a(item,1)=rx1
8260      a(item,2)=ry1
8270      a(item,3)=rx2
8280      a(item,4)=ry2
8290      a(item,5)=rx3
8300      a(item,6)=ry3
8310      a(item,7)=rx4
8320      a(item,8)=ry4
8330    END IF
8340    item=item+1
8350 END DEFine record

```

Commentary

Lines 8080 – 8140: If the new item is a simple line, all that needs to be done is to record its type (1) and the start and finish coordinates.

Lines 8150 – 8220: In the case of a circle, the coordinates of the centre, the radius, the eccentricity and the rotation are recorded.

Lines 8230 – 8330: For a box, the X and Y coordinates of all the four corners needs to be recorded if the rotation is not to be recalculated when the shape is redrawn.

Module 2.1.9: Redrawing a shape

Having given ourselves the ability to record a shape in an array, we now turn to the question of retrieving a shape from an array and placing it back on the screen.

Module 2.1.9: Lines 10000 – 10120

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine PROCedure global_draw (i)
10020 REMark *****
10030 IF a(i,0)=1
10040   LINE a(i,1),a(i,2) TO a(i,3),a(i,4)
10050 END IF
10060 IF a(i,0)=2
10070   CIRCLE a(i,1),a(i,2),a(i,3),a(i,4),
10080     RAD (a(i,5))
10090 END IF
10100 IF a(i,0)=3
10110   LINE a(i,1),a(i,2) TO a(i,3),a(i,4) TO
10120     a(i,5),a(i,6) TO a(i,7),a(i,8) TO
10130     a(i,1),a(i,2)
10140 END IF
10150 END DEFine global_draw

```

Testing

Run the program and draw a few shapes, stop the program with ESCape and then clear the screen. Call up the drawing module by typing:

global_draw (0)[ENTER]

and you should see your first shape redrawn. According to the number of shapes you originally drew, you can call up GLOBAL_DRAW with arguments other than zero.

Module 2.1.10: Redrawing the whole design

With a module installed which is capable of redrawing a single line or shape, it becomes a trivial matter to redraw the whole design.

Module 2.1.10: Lines 9000 – 9090

```

9000 REMark *****
9010 DEFine PROCedure redraw
9020 REMark *****
9030 IF item>0
9040   CLS
9050   FOR i=0 TO item-1
9060     global_draw (i)
9070   NEXT i
9080 END IF
9090 END DEFine recall

```

Testing

When you have entered a number of lines and shapes, stop the program, clear the screen and type:

redraw[ENTER]

The entire design should be recreated on the screen.

Module 2.1.11: Deleting lines and shapes

Since the design is not stored as a whole but in the form of individual lines and shapes, it is also a simple matter to give the user the option of deleting individual items. This module displays the whole design, line by line, with the option of deleting any line. It can also be used to redraw the design if the screen has been cleared by stopping the program.

Module 2.1.11: Lines 11000 – 11400

```

11000 REMark *****
11010 DEFine PROCedure remove
11020 REMark *****

```

```

11030 CLS
11040 i=0
11050 PRINT #0, "DELETE (Y/N): ?"
11060 PRINT #0, "\ESCAPE TO TERMINATE DELETE
FUNCTION"
11070 REPEAT loop
11080 REPEAT flashing
11090 OVER -1
11100 global_draw (i)
11110 global_draw (i)
11120 t1$=INKEY$
11130 IF t1$="Y" OR t1$="Y"
11140 FOR j=i TO item-1
11150 FOR k=0 TO 8
11160 a(j,k)=a(j+1,k)
11170 NEXT k
11180 NEXT j
11190 item=item-1
11200 EXIT flashing
11210 END IF
11220 IF t1$=CHR$(27)
11230 OVER 0
11240 FOR j=i TO item-1
11250 global_draw (j)
11260 NEXT j
11270 RETURN
11280 END IF
11290 IF t1$<>" "
11300 EXIT flashing
11310 END IF
11320 END REPEAT flashing
11330 IF t1$<>"Y" AND t1$<>"Y"
11340 OVER 0
11350 global_draw (i)
11360 i=i+1
11370 END IF
11380 IF i=item THEN EXIT loop
11390 END REPEAT loop
11400 END DEFINE remove

```

Commentary

Lines 11080 – 11320: This loop continually draws and redraws one line or shape with OVER set to minus one, so that the item flashes on the screen.

Lines 11130 – 11210: If the user responds with 'Y' to the prompt asking if the item is to be deleted, the rest of the contents of the array above the current item are copied down one place, wiping that item out.

Lines 11220 – 11280: If the ESCape key is pressed, the rest of the design is drawn and the module terminates. This facility is useful for redrawing the design if the program has been restarted with DO 0.

Lines 11290 – 11370: Any key other than 'Y' or 'y' simply sends the module on to the next item in the design, having drawn the current shape on the screen.

Testing

Provided that you have entered some shapes, you should now be able to press 'D' from the main part of the program to obtain this module. Confirm that you can page through the design you have entered, deleting items or leaving them untouched. Pressing ESCape at the beginning of the design should result in no change being made.

Module 2.1.12: Windows and scales

We have so far not touched at all on one of the most useful abilities of Designer — to move the screen like a window over a large design or to shrink a design so that it can be seen on a single screen. Normally, this is a fairly complex mathematical manoeuvre but the simplicity of this module is an indication of the power that SuperBASIC brings to bear in its graphics commands. The lines of calculations necessary on most other machines are reduced on the QL to a single, simple SCALE command.

Module 2.1.12: Lines 12000 – 12120

```

12000 REMARK *****
12010 DEFINE PROCEDURE scaling
12020 REMARK *****
12030 INPUT #0, "SCALE (50-10000): ";screen
12040 INPUT #0, "ORIGIN X (0-9950): ";org_x
12050 INPUT #0, "ORIGIN Y (0-9950): ";org_y
12060 size=2*screen/100
12070 IF size<2 THEN size=2
12080 SCALE screen,org_x,org_y
12090 cx=org_x+1.6*screen/2
12100 cy=org_y+screen/2
12110 redraw
12120 END DEFINE scaling

```

Commentary

Line 12030: On start-up, the design is viewed on a scale where 100 units would represent the height of the screen. This can be altered so that the design can be viewed at twice the size (50 units screen height) or one hundredth the scale (10,000 units screen height).

Line 12040 – 12050: We noted at the beginning that the program allows for designs of up to 10,000 by 10,000 pixels. To begin with, the program presents you with a view of the bottom lefthand corner of the design, beginning at coordinates 0,0. Using the scale command, however, it is per-

fectly possible to move the coordinates represented by the bottom lefthand corner of the screen, so that a different part of the design is seen.

Line 12060: The size of the cursor must vary according to the scale at which the design is being viewed. If the design has been shrunk by a factor of a hundred, a cursor which is 4/100 pixels across will not be much use.

Lines 12090 – 12100: Having rescaled the screen, the cursor coordinates are recalculated so that they lie in the middle of the screen — note that the screen is always 1.6 times as wide as it is high. Note that moving the screen in relation to the design is the fast way to move the cursor from one point to another.

Testing

With a design entered, you should now be able to move the screen over the design and enlarge or shrink it.

Module 2.1.13: Storing data on microdrive

We now turn to a very important module from the point of view of this program and, indeed, of most of the programs in the book. This module and the next form a unit which allows data generated by a program to be stored on microdrive and then retrieved by the program at a later date.

Module 2.1.13: Lines 13000 – 13170

```
13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure store
13020 REMark *****
13030 CLS
13040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
13050 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file$
13060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
13070 DELETE tfile$
13080 OPEN_NEW #8,"mdv1_" & file$
13090 PRINT#8,item
13100 FOR i=0 TO item-1
13110   FOR j=0 TO 8
13120     PRINT #8,a(i,j)
13130   NEXT j
13140 NEXT i
13150 CLOSE#8
13160 redraw
13170 END DEFine store
```

Commentary

Lines 13050 – 13060: The module gives the user the chance to define the name under which the data is to be stored. This is only possible because the QL allows us to use a string variable as a filename when talking to the microdrives.

Line 13070: Since one object of the program is to be able to work on an existing file, modify it and store it again, we must be careful to remove any files of the same name before attempting to store some data, otherwise the program will stop with an ALREADY EXISTS error message.

Line 13080: The microdrive is instructed to create a new file (OPEN_NEW), which will be accessed along ' #8', or channel 8, by the program. The file is to be on microdrive 1 and will appear in the directory under the name recorded in FILE\$.

Lines 13090 – 13140: These lines simply print out the data stored in array, not to the screen but to channel 8, which we have already informed the operating system is to be directly associated with the data file we have just opened. Note that in storing on microdrive it is important to store the number of items to be recorded as the first item. This allows the next module, which recalls the data, to know how many items are to be picked up. There are other methods, such as detecting the end of file marker, but they are none of them as fast as knowing exactly how many items are to be obtained.

Line 13150: In order to create a valid file, we must ensure that it is properly terminated. This is done using the CLOSE command, which also frees channel 8 for other uses.

Line 13160: Having corrupted the screen in storing the data, the design is recreated using REDRAW.

Module 2.1.14: Recalling the data

This is a mirror image of the previous module, in allowing data on the microdrive to be picked up and the design which it defines to be recreated.

Module 2.1.14: Lines 14000 – 14160

```
14000 REMark *****
14010 DEFine PROCedure recall
14020 REMark *****
14030 CLS
14040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
14050 DIR mdv1_
14060 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file$
14070 OPEN_IN #8,"mdv1_" & file$
14080 INPUT#8,item
14090 FOR i=0 TO item-1
14100   FOR j=0 TO 8
14110     INPUT #8,a(i,j)
14120   NEXT j
14130 NEXT i
14140 CLOSE#8
14150 redraw
14160 END DEFine recall
```

Commentary

Lines 14050 – 14060: The directory for the cartridge currently in drive 1 is displayed and the user asked to specify which file is to be used.

Line 14070: The name input by the user is used to open an existing file (OPEN_IN).

Lines 14090 – 14140: The information which was stored by the last module is pulled off the drive in exactly the same order.

Line 14150: The design whose details have been obtained is placed on to the screen using REDRAW.

Testing

Ensure that there is a properly formatted microdrive cartridge in drive 1, then create a simple design and use 'M' to store it. Stop the program, then start it again with DO 1 to clear the memory. Answer 'Y' to the prompt asking you if you wish to load from the microdrive. Give the name of the file under which the design was stored and you should see the drive activate and then the design recreated on the screen.

If this test is successful, the program is ready for use.

PROGRAM 2.2: 3-D GRAPH

Program function

This program is intended as a timely warning against over-reliance on the increasing tendency of major manufacturers to make their machines the basis of a much broader package including software. Later in the book you will find several examples of applications which could no doubt be simulated using your Psion software, raising the question of whether you wish to rely solely on what you are given or retain the ability to design for yourself.

The current program is hardly a complex one, but that is precisely the point. In relatively few lines, it succeeds in creating a visual display of certain types of numeric information which is far more striking than anything which the excellent Easel package can produce. A full three-dimensional graph effect is created by the elementary use of the turtle graphics commands, giving a taste of the power they hold for more complex applications.

New concepts introduced during the course of the program include:

- 1) Flexible use of DATA statements.
- 2) The turtle graphics commands.

100 UNITS

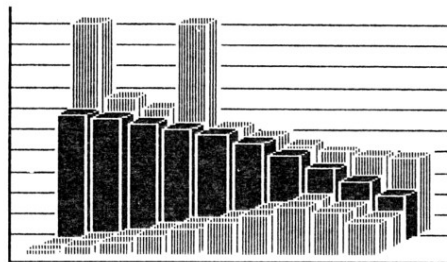


Figure 2.2: Part of Display Generated by 3-D Graph.

Module 2.2.1: Simple line drawing

The beauty of the QL's turtle graphics is the sheer simplicity which they bring to the drawing of shapes, as indicated by this two-line module. Its effect is to accept an instruction to draw a line in a certain direction for a certain distance.

Module 2.2.1: Lines 3000 – 3050

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure turtle (angle,distance)
3020 REMark *****
3030   TURNTO angle
3040   MOVE distance
3050 END DEFine turtle
```

Module 2.2.2: Describing a shape

Once it is possible to have a line drawn, it becomes a relatively simple matter to describe most shapes, whether two or three dimensional. The current module lays down a three-dimensional block on the screen once a number of variables have been defined.

Module 2.2.2: Lines 2000 – 2150

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure blocks
```

```

2020 REMark *****
2030 LINE start_x,start_y
2040 PENDOWN
2050 turtle 180,wide
2060 turtle 90,high
2070 turtle 0,wide
2080 turtle 180,wide
2090 turtle 30,deep
2100 turtle 0,wide
2110 turtle 210,deep
2120 turtle 270,high
2130 turtle 30,deep
2140 turtle 90,high
2150 END DEFINE blocks

```

Commentary

Line 2030: Using the line command with a single set of coordinates moves the graphics cursor, thus defining the start point for the shape to be drawn.

Lines 2050 – 2140: The outline of the block. It is far easier to wait until it is displayed on the screen than to attempt to describe what is happening here.

Testing

A number of variables have to be defined and, in addition, it will be helpful to modify the previous module temporarily in order to allow the shape being drawn to be analysed line by line.

Enter a temporary line:

```
3045 tt$ = inkey$( - 1 )
```

then type the following in direct mode:

```

high = 20[ENTER]
wide = 20[ENTER]
deep = 20[ENTER]
ink 7 : paper 0 : cls[ENTER]
start_x = 40[ENTER]
start_y = 40[ENTER]
blocks[ENTER]

```

You should see a single line drawn on the screen. Press a key and a second line will be drawn. As you continue to press a key each time a line is drawn, what you are seeing is the individual TURTLE instructions being carried out by the previous module. When you have finished the test, don't forget to remove the temporary program line at 3045.

Module 2.2.3: The data for the program

Most of the programs in this book, as you will discover, are interactive —

that is to say, as they run they request information from the user and act upon it. This is the ideal method for most purposes, but when limited amounts of data are being processed it is quite possible that the amount of programming involved in providing the interactive routines gets out of proportion to the possible benefits.

One simple solution is to make use of the often neglected DATA statement, which allows information to be recorded within the program itself and recaptured by the program using the READ statement. The advantage of this is that, once information has been recorded in DATA statements, it can easily be saved with a program, or saved as a separate section and later merged with the core of the program. It can easily be displayed by use of nothing more complex than LIST and, of course, changes to the data can be made by use of EDIT. The current module is an example of how a DATA module can be laid out so that the information it contains is easily recognisable.

Module 2.2.3: Lines 5000 – 5380

```

5000 REMark *****
5010 REMark data
5020 REMark *****
5030 :
5040 REMark NUMBER OF COLUMNS (1-10)
5050 DATA 10
5060 :
5070 REMark NUMBER OF BANKS (1-4)
5080 DATA 4
5090 :
5100 REMark NAMES FOR BANKS
5110 DATA "Bank 1"
5120 DATA "Bank 2"
5130 DATA "Bank 3"
5140 DATA "Bank 4"
5150 :
5160 REMark NAME FOR VERTICAL AXIS
5170 DATA "VERTICAL"
5180 :
5190 REMark MAXIMUM VALUE VERTICALLY
5200 DATA 100
5210 :
5220 REMark NO. OF MARKERS VERTICALLY
5230 DATA 10
5240 :
5250 REMark NAME FOR HORIZONTAL AXIS
5260 DATA "Horizontal"
5270 :
5280 REMark DATA FOR BANK 1
5290 DATA 100,65,60,100,51,47,43,40,38,37
5300 :
5310 REMark DATA FOR BANK 2
5320 DATA 60,58,56,53,51,47,41,35,29,22

```

```

5330 :
5340 : REMARK DATA FOR BANK 3
5350 : DATA 2,4,6,9,12,15,19,23,20,15
5360 :
5370 : REMARK DATA FOR BANK 4
5380 : DATA 2,4,6,9,12,15,19,23,20,15

```

Commentary

Lines 5040 – 5050: The program as currently written is intended to deal with between one and four rows of three-dimensional columns. According to the number of columns in a row, the width of the individual columns will be adjusted so that the full width of the screen is used.

Lines 5070 – 5080: One to four rows can be displayed, each being drawn in front of the previous row. For this reason, the program is most suited to applications where there is a fair guarantee that one set of figures will contain values which are less than those of a previous set. An example of this might be the turnover and profit of a company over a number of years, where profit is always going to be less than turnover. If the front rows of a particular display are going to be consistently higher than the back rows, the back rows will be effectively hidden and the display of very little use.

Lines 5100 – 5140: The names of the individual rows, or banks, will eventually be displayed at the bottom of the screen in colours appropriate to the four banks.

Lines 5160 – 5230: The name to be displayed against the vertical axis and the maximum number of units it is intended to represent. Figures input for the height of the individual columns will be expressed as a proportion of this maximum figure. The user may specify the number of units into which the axis is to be divided.

Lines 5250 – 5260: The name to be displayed against the horizontal axis of the graph.

Lines 5280 – 5380: The data for the 4*10 columns specified for the graph.

Module 2.2.4: Reading in the data

Having entered the data on which the graph will be based, we now turn to the module which will convert that data into variables which will be used by the drawing routines.

Module 2.2.4: Lines 1000 – 1280

```

1000 REMARK *****
1010 REMARK control
1020 REMARK *****
1030 : PAPER 0 : CLS : CLS#0
1040 : RESTORE 5000

```

```

1050 : READ columns,banks
1060 : DIM bank$(banks-1,20)
1070 : FOR i=0 TO banks-1
1080 :   READ bank$(i)
1090 : NEXT i
1100 : RESTORE 5160
1110 : READ v_axis$,v_max,v_marks
1120 : READ h_axis$
1130 : wide=INT(100/columns)
1140 : deep=5
1150 : GRID
1160 : RESTORE 5290
1170 : FOR bank=1 TO banks
1180 :   start_x=25-deep*bank+wide
1190 :   start_y=10-deep*(bank-1)/2
1200 :   FOR i=1 TO columns
1210 :     READ high
1220 :     high=high*80/v_max
1230 :     FILL 1 : INK bank+1 : blocks
1240 :     FILL 0 : INK 0 : blocks
1250 :     start_x=start_x+wide+2
1260 :   NEXT i
1270 : NEXT bank
1280 : STOP

```

Commentary

Lines 1050 – 1090: The number of columns and banks is read from the DATA section and the names for the four banks stored in the array BANK\$.

Lines 1100 – 1150: The DATA relating to the vertical axis and the name of the horizontal axis is read. The width of the individual columns is calculated so that one row of columns will span one hundred graphics locations across the screen. The variable DEEP records the amount by which an individual column will appear to go back 'into' the screen. Finally the call to GRID, the next module, will produce the framework within which the eventual graph will be displayed. Note the RESTORE statement which sets the READ instruction to the appropriate line for data. It is important, when setting up your own graphs, that you do stick to the same sections within the data module as shown in the current program. If less than four banks are to be used, do not delete the spare lines and renumber or you may confuse the acquisition of data.

Lines 1160 – 1270: These lines read the figures from the last section of the data module, which represent the height of the individual columns. The two loops ensure that the correct number of columns are created for each bank in turn. The variables START__X and START__Y are set for each bank so that each row of columns will start lower down and to the left of its predecessor. As each column is completed, START__X is incremented so that the row will be drawn from left to right.

Lines 1210 – 1240: The figures for the height of each column are read and recalculated so that they conform to the maximum value laid down for the vertical axis. The line drawing routines are now called up twice. On the first call the columns are drawn with FILL set and with a different colour for each bank — the result is a rather featureless shape. The second call switches off FILL and sets the INK colour to black. The result is that the edges of the column are picked out in black, giving a three-dimensional effect. As each column is completed, START_X is incremented so that the row is drawn from right to left.

Testing

The module can only be tested if the reference to GRID is deleted in line 1150, since that module has yet to be entered, or if the first three lines and the last line of the next module are entered so that there is a dummy procedure called 'grid' for the current module to call up.

Once that has been done, simply run the program and you should see the four banks of columns drawn on a black screen. In comparing the height of the columns with the figures contained in the data module, remember that the 3-D effect means that each bank is slightly lower than the previous one. To find the true height of a column, you need to follow back its top surface to the back row, since it is the front top edge of columns on the back row which accurately represents the height of the column. This will be clearer when the next module has been entered, giving a grid against which to measure the columns.

Module 2.2.5: Drawing the grid for the graph

A simple module which draws lines across the screen at the intervals specified by the user, and which labels the various axes.

Module 2.2.5: Lines 4000 – 4200

```
4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure grid
4020 REMark *****
4030 INK 7
4040 v_unit=80/v_marks
4050 LINE 0,96 TO 0,0 TO 150,0 TO 150,96
4060 FOR i=0 TO v_marks
4070 LINE 0,10+i*v_unit TO 150,10+i*v_unit
4080 NEXT i
4090 AT 0,12 : PRINT v_max;" UNITS"
4100 v_axis#=v_axis# & " " & INT(v_max/v_marks)
4110 & "*" & v_marks
4110 FOR i=1 TO LEN(v_axis#)
4120 AT i-1,35 : PRINT v_axis#(i)
```

```
4130 NEXT i
4140 PRINT #0,h_axis#
4150 FOR i=0 TO 3
4160 AT #0,i,20 : INK #0,i+2
4170 PRINT #0,bank#(i)
4180 NEXT i
4190 AT #0,1,0
4200 END DEFine grid
```

Testing

Running the program should now result in the same display of columns, but in this case properly labelled.

PROGRAM 2.3: SCREEN

Program function

This program is, in its original form at least, a triumph of technique over commonsense. Its purpose is to provide a screen dump, or copy to a printer, of the contents of the screen. This is not an over-complex task, though the details can be a little fiddly. What it is, however, in BASIC, is very time-consuming. The screen covers a lot of memory within the QL (32K), and every byte — indeed every bit — has to be analysed before the full screen dump is achieved.

One of the major problems is that micros and printers work in different directions. The QL, like most other micros, records the contents of the screen in the form of 8-bit bytes, with each bit in a particular byte representing one in a line of eight pixels across the screen (in the QL it isn't quite this simple, but we'll go into that later). Printers, or at least the dot-matrix variety, are usually capable of receiving a byte and interpreting it as an instruction to print eight dots in a line — but vertically.

The result of all this is that, while the screen memory of the micro is held in straightforward bytes and while the printer can be sent straightforward bytes, the whole thing falls apart because, in order to print exactly what is on the screen, the bytes in the micro's memory have to be sliced apart and combined with parts of others. Consider the 64-pixel square in **Figure 2.3**.

00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57
60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67
70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77

Figure 2.3: 64-Pixel Square.

To a typical micro, the small block represented would be stored in the form of eight bytes, the first recording pixels 00–07, the second 10–17, etc. For a typical printer to print the area represented, the information would have to be supplied in the form of eight bytes, the first recording 00–70, the second recording 01–71 etc. In the case of the QL the situation is even worse, since, rather than recording the information in easily-addressable blocks of eight bytes, the QL's screen memory is arranged in single-pixel thickness lines right the way across the screen.

Even so, with proper analysis of the screen memory bytes, and time-consuming translations, any printer capable of bit-mapped graphics can be made to print out a black and white copy of the screen. The only problem is that, for most conceivable purposes, all the work of translation is entirely unnecessary. My co-author on several other books, Mark England, pointed out that if, in terms of the 8*8 square of pixels printed above, the printer were sent eight bytes containing 70–77, 60–67, 50–57, etc, it would print out the square perfectly, except that the piece of paper would need to be turned through 90 degrees. The resulting program takes one-fifth the time to do exactly the same job, except that on some printers, where the horizontal spacing between the pixels is different from the vertical, the image may be squashed one way or another. For the sake of completeness, both methods are included within the program, though you are free to regard the first four modules as nothing more than an interesting example of how to analyse the contents of an area of screen memory, and accordingly omit them.

The arrangement of screen memory on the QL

Before we go any further, it would be wise to take a quick look at the way in which screen memory on the QL is arranged, since it is, like previous Sinclair machines, a little eccentric and has a major effect on the way the program has been written.

In essence, the QL's screen memory consists of 32K of memory (32768 bytes) which begins at address 131072. The screen which the user sees (on a domestic TV) is 1024 pixels across, and a single line across of 1024 pixels is represented by 128 bytes of consecutive memory. Thus a picture of screen memory might look like this:

TOP LEFT	TOP RIGHT
131072 - - - - -	131199 - - - - -
131200 - - - - -	131327 - - - - -
- - - - -	- - - - -
- - - - -	- - - - -
- - - - -	- - - - -
163584 - - - - -	163711 - - - - -
163712 - - - - -	163839 - - - - -
BOTTOMLEFT	BOTTOMRIGHT

This, of course, is the whole screen, including the areas given over to the border and to the #0 command lines at the bottom. The part normally used by the program is 896 pixels wide and 200 pixels high, and its start and finish addresses are as follows:

TOP LEFT	TOP RIGHT
133128 - - - - -	133239 - - - - -
- - - - -	- - - - -
- - - - -	- - - - -
158600 - - - - -	158711 - - - - -
BOTTOMLEFT	BOTTOMRIGHT

But even this does not actually define the situation for there is no simple one to one relationship between the bytes and the screen pixels, rather the relationship varies according to the screen mode being employed.

In mode 8, the lower resolution mode, each group of eight pixels horizontally has two bytes controlling it. The two bytes dictate four characteristics about each pixel in the group — whether their colour includes green, red, and blue, and whether they are flashing. Elementary maths leads to an obvious conclusion here. Two bytes contain 16 bits, so, using two bytes, there is no way in which four facts can be recorded about eight pixels, ie 32 facts. The solution to this is that in the lower resolution mode the pixels are grouped in horizontal pairs, so that each characteristic applies to two pixels in a group of four double pixels. Each two memory bytes are arranged in the following manner:

	BYTE 1				BYTE 2			
PIXEL PAIR	1/2	3/4	5/6	7/8	1/2	3/4	5/6	7/8
	[GF]	[GF]	[GF]	[GF]	[RB]	[RB]	[RB]	[RB]

where F records whether FLASH is set for the pixel pair and G, R and B record whether green, red and blue are included in its colour.

In high resolution mode, where the four available colours can all be produced from two primary colours, and the flash characteristic is not available, there are accordingly only two pieces of information to be recorded about each pixel, and two bytes can deal with eight individual pixels, rather than grouping them into pairs:

	BYTE 1								BYTE 2							
PIXEL No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	[G]	[G]	[G]	[G]	[G]	[G]	[G]	[G]	[R]	[R]	[R]	[R]	[R]	[R]	[R]	[R]

In the program which follows, we take advantage of this two-byte structure to exclude certain colours from the screen dump, thus allowing a greater

variety of background colours. The ever-present problem with screen dumps is how to choose the basis on which a pixel is going to be regarded as 'set' and therefore printed — if all the colours are regarded as setting the pixel, then only areas of the screen which are black (ie have no colour whatsoever) will be left blank in the screen dump. For the sake of simplicity I have chosen to look only at the second of the two bytes when choosing pixels which will be printed. This means that in both low and high resolution, backgrounds (or lettering) of either black or green will be left blank on the paper.

Module 2.3.1: Control

In use, this module would be altered substantially. In its present form, its job is to fill the screen with a range of characters before calling up the modules which carry out the screen dump.

Module 2.3.1: Lines 12000 – 12190

```
12000 REMark: *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure screen
12020 REMark: *****
12030 PAPER 0 : INK 7 : CLS : CLS#0
12040 FOR i=1 TO 20
12050   PRINT " ";FILL$(CHR$(47+i),35);""
12060 NEXT i
12070 CIRCLE B0,50,20
12080 CIRCLE B0,50,40
12090 REPEAT check
12100   INPUT #0,"QUICK OR SLOW (Q/S): ";Q$
12110   IF Q$="q" OR Q$="Q" OR Q$="s" OR Q$="S"
      THEN EXIT check
12120 END REPEAT check
12130 CLS#0
12140 OPEN #0,ser1
12150 PRINT #0,CHR$(27);"A";CHR$(8)
12160 IF Q$="s" OR Q$="S" THEN line_start
12170 IF Q$="q" OR Q$="Q" THEN line_start_2
12180 CLOSE #0
12190 END DEFine screen
```

Commentary

Lines 12090 – 12120: These lines allow the user to specify which of the two methods of dumping the screen is to be employed — see the introduction to the program for further explanation.

Line 12150: Any screen dump program must be aimed at a specific printer or printers and be capable of generating the specific commands needed by that particular machine. The current program is intended for an Epson FX-80 dot-matrix printer. This particular sequence of characters sets the spacing between each line of characters printed at 8/72 of an inch, removing the small gap which is normally left between each line. If you are using a

different printer, you will have to consult your manual as to the correct method of achieving this or, indeed, any of the special printer commands contained within the program. If your printer is not capable of altering the distance between lines, you will probably find that, when solid blocks extend over two character lines, a thin white line will be seen.

Testing

There is no effective way of testing any of these modules until the whole screen dump routine is entered. The program is not a long one, so this should not represent a major inconvenience.

Module 2.3.2: Stepping down the screen

The method in this first program section will be to scan the screen from left to right in 8*8 pixel squares, thus allowing a block of eight bytes to be translated for the benefit of the printer. Since the screen memory is arranged in lines of one pixel thickness which cross the entire width of the screen before beginning again on the next line down, not in neat 8*8 pixel squares, the first need is to identify the start position in memory of each line of 8*8 blocks.

Screen memory for the central part of the screen starts at address 133128. To move eight pixels down the screen we have to move on 1024 bytes through the screen memory — eight lines, each 128 bytes long. The loop which determines the start of each line of 8*8 pixel squares will therefore start at 133129 (remember that we are using only the second of each pair of bytes) and move through the two hundred lines of pixels down the screen in steps of eight lines (8*128).

Module 2.3.2: Lines 4000 – 4090

```
4000 REMark: *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure line_start
4020 REMark: *****
4030 FOR l_start=133129 TO 133129+199*128 STEP
      128*8
4040   t$=""
4050   read_line
4060   PRINT #0,CHR$(27);"L";CHR$(192);CHR$(1);
4070   PRINT #0,t$
4080 NEXT l_start
4090 END DEFine line_start
```

Commentary

Line 4060: In the case of the FX-80 printer, the sequence CHR\$(27);"L" puts the printer into bit-mapped graphics mode. CHR\$(192);CHR\$(1) describe the number of items of data which the printer should expect to receive before printing a line. This is set to 448 (192 + 256*1) because we shall be printing one vertical byte for half the number of bits which represent the

width of the screen. The screen is 112 bytes wide, giving 8*56 vertical lines to be sent to the printer before one line is complete. For other printers, you will need to know what the sequence is to enter bit-mapped mode, and whether they accept a block of data or print each vertical line as it is received — consult your manual.

Line 4070: The string of characters which later modules have built up, representing the first eight lines on the screen.

Module 2.3.3: Stepping across the screen

Having found the beginning of each block of eight lines, this loop scans across the screen in steps of two bytes, thus selecting the second of the two bytes which refer to each group of pixels.

Module 2.3.3: Lines 3000 — 3060

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure read_line
3020 REMark *****
3030   FOR start = 1_start TO 1_start+111 STEP 2
3040     read_bit
3050   NEXT start
3060 END DEFine read_line
```

Module 2.3.4: Stepping through eight bits

We can now identify the position of a single byte in the screen memory but, as we have seen, that byte is of no interest to the printer, which prints downwards rather than across. Referring back to Figure 2.3, what we have to do is to identify eight bytes which fall in a line downwards and then to read the 64 pixels in the form of eight downwards bytes. The first step is to set up a loop which reads through eight bit positions.

Module 2.3.4: Lines 2000 — 2060

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure read_bit
2020 REMark *****
2030   FOR bit=0 TO 7
2040     read_8
2050   NEXT bit
2060 END DEFine read_bit
```

Module 2.3.5: Translating from horizontal bytes to vertical

The final module required by this method takes one bit from each of the eight bytes in the block and creates a new byte out of them which is a recording of one eight-pixel vertical line on the screen.

Module 2.3.5: Lines 1000 — 1080

```
1000 REMark *****
1010 DEFine PROCedure read_8
1020 REMark *****
1025   t_byte=0
1030   FOR byte=0 TO 7
1040     IF PEEK (start+byte*128) && 2^(7-bit)
1050       t_byte=t_byte+2^(7-byte)
1060     END IF
1070   NEXT byte
1075   t$=t$ & CHR$(t_byte)
1080 END DEFine read_8
```

Commentary

Line 1025: T_BYTE will be used to store the vertical byte as it is built up.

Lines 1040 — 1060: These lines use the && operator to discover whether a particular bit is set in each of the eight bytes which the loop shuttles through. The effect of && is to compare two numbers and to return a result consisting of a number which has a binary '1' wherever *both* of the compared numbers also have a binary '1'. Thus comparing:

16 — 00010000 with 127 — 01111111

the result is 16, since that is the only bit which is set in both. To find out if a particular bit is set within a byte, all we have to do is to compare 2^{BIT NUMBER} with the byte. If the result is still 2^{BIT NUMBER}, then that bit is set in the byte. The loop therefore shuttles down the eight bytes, using these lines to detect which of the eight bits are set and adding the value of the vertical byte. Note that though the memory is read from top to bottom, the particular printer involved requires the pixels to be represented in the opposite order, so the value added to the vertical byte is 2^(7 - BYTE), not 2^{BYTE}.

Line 1075: Having run through the eight bytes and created one vertical byte, the value of this is added to the string which will eventually be printed out.

Testing

If you have an Epson FX-80 printer, or one of the many other types which have a compatible set of commands, you are now in a position to type SCREEN, call for a slow printout and see the demonstration screen created and dumped to the printer. Be warned that this process will take some 20 minutes or more.

If you have a printer which is not compatible with the Epson command set, I am afraid it is a matter of adjusting the printer commands contained within the program to your own machine. Provided that you have a bit-mapped graphics capability, however, this should not be difficult.

Module 2.3.6: Stepping through the lines with the sideways method

We now turn to the first of the two modules which produce a quicker printout by turning the image sideways, thus reducing the amount of calculation to be done. I will not go into detail in the commentary on these three modules, since they are far simpler to follow than those for the previous method.

The current module starts the program reading the bottom lefthand byte of the screen. Later modules will dictate that each line is read from the bottom of the screen to the top, a single line of bytes. Each new line will start, therefore, on the next byte along the bottom of the screen, or rather the next but one since we are only using every other byte. The bottom to top lines are 200 bytes long but, as you can see from line 11060, the printer is told to expect 400 bytes. This is because on the particular printer being used, a better effect is gained by printing each set of pixels twice.

Module 2.3.6: Lines 11000 – 11090

```
11000 REMark *****
11010 DEFine PROCedure line_start_2
11020 REMark *****
11030 FOR l_start=158601 TO 158601+111 STEP 2
11040   t$=""
11050   read_line_2
11060   PRINT #8,CHR$(27);"L";CHR$(144);CHR$(1);
11070   PRINT #8,t$
11080 NEXT l_start
11090 END DEFine line_start_2
```

Module 2.3.7: Stepping up the screen

Having established the bottom of a line of bytes to be read, all that remains is to step up the line, jumping 128 bytes each time and placing the byte found into T\$ to be printed. In fact, as mentioned, the effect is better with the FX-80 if each byte is printed twice.

Module 2.3.7: Lines 10000 – 10060

```
10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine PROCedure read_line_2
10020 REMark *****
10030 FOR byte = l_start TO l_start+199*128
10040   STEP -128
10040   t$=t$ & CHR$(PEEK(byte)) & CHR$(PEEK
10040   (byte))
10050 NEXT byte
10060 END DEFine read_line_2
```

Testing

As with the previous method, but this time you will find that a column of characters is printed across the screen every eight seconds or so.

Using the program

As it is presently set up, the program is no more than a demonstration of the fact that a screen dump can be done. In use, it should be renumbered with a high starting number and line increments of 1, so that it can be merged in with the program from which you want a dump. When the screen display is as you want it, either stop the program and enter 'screen' or call up SCREEN from within the program. Remember that the program is designed to ignore green and black. If the colour combinations you have chosen give problems, you will have to use the RECOL command to achieve something which makes sense when translated into black and white.

PROGRAM 2.4: CHARACTERS

Program function

Having looked at some of the high resolution capabilities of the QL, we now turn to one slightly unusual aspect of using low resolution graphics — a program to allow you to change the shape of the characters which the QL prints on the screen. But before we go on to the program proper, a word of explanation is needed about the way characters are created and printed on the screen.

The QL's screen, in low resolution mode (mode 8), has space for 20 lines, each of 37 characters, a total of 740 character spaces. In other words you could print 740 separate items on the screen, though some of them would be the same since the QL cannot generate 740 *different* characters at the same time. That 740, however, is not the end of the story. If you were to look closely at any character on the screen you would find that it is not composed of solid lines, like the words you are reading now, but of dots. In fact every one of the character spaces on the screen is made up of 64 dot positions and it is combinations of these 64 dots which make up each character the QL can display. The letter 'A', for instance, might be made up as in Figure 2.4.

The dots which make up the characters are known as 'pixels', which is short for 'picture elements', and they represent the smallest item which the QL can handle on the screen, though, in mode 8, the QL will only handle two pixels at a time.

Such complex shapes do not appear by chance, and it is clear that somewhere in the QL's memory it must be laid down that, when you press the

```

=====
ROW 1 --> !      0 0      !
2 --> !      0 0 0 0      !
3 --> !      0 0      0 0      !
4 --> !      0 0 0 0 0 0      !
5 --> !      0 0      0 0      !
6 --> !      0 0      0 0      !
7 --> !      0 0      0 0      !
8 --> !
=====

```

Figure 2.4: Enlargement of Letter 'A' as it might Appear On-screen.

key labelled 'A', the pattern of dots shown in the illustration appears on the screen. In fact, all the characters which the QL can print are stored in the form of numbers, in the QL's ROM, an area called the 'character memory' or 'character ROM'. Each character is allocated nine bytes of memory, and each of those bytes determines where the pixels shall appear on one row of the character. This done by making the value of each byte into a picture of the row in the binary numbering system used by the QL, where numbers are expressed in terms of powers of the number 2 rather than the number 10, as in our normal counting.

Thus, 201300 in our usual way of counting means:

$$(2 \times 10^6) + (0 \times 10^5) + (1 \times 10^4) + (3 \times 10^3) + (0 \times 10^2) + (0 \times 10^1) + (6 \times 10^0)$$

In binary, however, the only digits allowed are '1' and '0', and a number like:

11001010

means:

$$(2^7) + (2^6) + (2^3) + (2^1) \text{ — ignoring the zeros}$$

A full understanding of binary is not necessary, provided that you remember that a single byte of memory in the QL is capable of holding one eight-digit binary number, and that all those ones and zeros are a perfect way of recording which pixels in a single row of a character are switched on. The letter 'A', for instance, could be represented by the eight binary numbers:

```

0 0 0 1 1 0 0 0
0 0 1 1 1 1 0 0
0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0
0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0
0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0
0 1 1 0 0 1 1 0
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

```

If you look closely you can still see the 'A' quite clearly, this time painted in '1's rather than pixels, though you'd have a hard time recognising it as:

24,60,102,126,102,102,102,0

which is what the binary numbers are when translated into our more comfortable decimal system of numbering.

The point of all this is that, when you call for a character to be printed on the screen, the QL looks at the contents of the 'character memory' and uses what it finds there to draw the character on the screen.

It follows from all of this that if it were possible to *change* the contents of the character memory, the shape of the characters printed on the screen would also change. We could have customised lettering, new graphics characters, anything at all which would fit into the basic 8*8 character square.

The problem, however, is that the character memory *cannot* be altered. It is part of the ROM, the 'read only memory' which is permanently built in to the QL. What we *can* do is to copy it to somewhere else in RAM, the kind of memory that can be changed, and then tell the ever-obedient QL that that is where character details are now to be taken from. Having done that, we can muck about with the character set as much as we like — and that is the purpose of the following program.



```

'F1' INK IN SQUARE
'F5' BLANK SQUARE
'B' BLOCK SHIFT LEFT
'I' INVERT
'H' HIRROR
'T' TURN
'P' PLACE IN MEMORY
'S' SAVE ON MICRODRIVE
'L' LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE
'A' ANOTHER CHARACTER
'H' CSIZE HEIGHT
'W' CSIZE WIDTH
'ESCAPE' TERMINATE
CURSOR ARROWS TO MOVE

```

Figure 2.5: Typical Display from Characters.

The display shows the screen during the character editing code, with a letter 'A' which has been rotated by 180 degrees.

Module 2.4.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module, which also calls up the next module to transfer the character data from ROM to RAM. Note, as in previous pro-

grams, the provision to start the program without initialising, by entering DO 0. This is particularly important in the case of the present program because part of the initialisation process is the setting aside of an area of memory to hold character data. If, having set up the reserved area, the program is initialised again, *more* memory will be reserved.

Module 2.4.1: Lines 11000 – 11060

```
11000 REMark *****
11010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
11020 REMark *****
11030 DIM array(7,7)
11040 ch=32 : key=0 : high=0 : wide=0
11050 transfer
11060 END DEFine initialise
```

Module 2.4.2: Transferring the character set

This short module is all that is needed to transfer the entire character set for #0 into RAM and then to set up all the variables necessary to switch the QL's attention to it. The actual switching will be accomplished by the control module since there is no need to go through the whole process of transfer if the program is stopped and started again. The ease with which the whole process can be accomplished depends on the fact that the QL keeps a record in RAM of where the character set is to be found. This register is set up when the QL is switched on but it can be changed to indicate another start address.

Module 2.4.2: Lines 24000 – 24100

```
24000 REMark *****
24010 DEFine PROCedure transfer
24020 REMark *****
24030 char_reg=167722
24040 rom_start=PEEK_L(char_reg)
24050 user_start=RESFR(875)
24060 char_start=user_start+11
24070 FOR i=0 TO 875 STEP 4
24080 POKE_L user_start+i,PEEK_L(rom_start+i)
24090 NEXT i
24100 END DEFine transfer
```

Commentary

Line 24030: This the address at which is found the two-byte register recording the start of the character data for channel 0.

Line 24040: ROM_START is set equal to the contents of the register so that the program will (a) know where to copy the data from and (b) know where to tell the system to find the original characters when the program terminates.

Line 24050: The RESPR command is used to achieve two things, the setting aside of 876 bytes of memory in the space allocated to the procedures and the setting of the variable USER_START to the beginning of that area. This is the area which will be used to store the character data. The characters which can be printed, and therefore which we can manipulate, are 32 (space) to 127 (copyright symbol), 96 in all. Each of them requires nine bytes to define, making a total of 864 bytes, plus 11 attached to the beginning of the character set for internal housekeeping purposes. Note that this allocation of memory is permanent in any one session. Loading subsequent programs will leave the memory area reserved — to free it, you must restart the system.

Line 24060: As indicated in the commentary on the last line, the first 11 bytes of the character data are of no use to us, so the actual characters will start at USER_START plus 11.

Lines 24070 – 24090: The ROM character data is read, four bytes at a time using PEEK_L and placed into the specially reserved area of RAM.

Testing

Type:

```
transfer[ENTER]
poke_l char_reg,user_start[ENTER]
print 123
```

If everything is well, you will see 123 printed on the screen in a perfectly normal way, even though you have instructed the system to take its character data from the reserved area of RAM. Before continuing, it might be wise to enter:

```
poke_l char_reg,rom_start
```

to switch back to the ROM character set.

Module 2.4.3: Displaying a magnified character

The essence of this program is that it will make it easy to edit characters. One way in which this is achieved is by printing an enlarged version of a specified character so that a cursor can be moved around it. This module allows the character to be specified and then prints it.

Module 2.4.3: Lines 12000 – 12270

```
12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure grid
12020 REMark *****
```

```

12030 REPEAT screen
12040   in$=""
12050   PAPER 4 : CLS
12060   PAPER 3
12070   FOR i=0 TO 7
12080     AT i,8 : PRINT " "
12090   NEXT i
12100   PRINT FILL$(" ",9)
12110   FOR i=0 TO 7
12120     byte=PEEK(char_start+(ch-32)*9+i)
12130     FOR j=7 TO 0 STEP -1
12140       array(i,7-j)=(2^j=(byte && 2^j))
12150     NEXT j
12160   NEXT i
12170   redraw
12180   INK 0 : PAPER 4
12190   AT 12,1 : PRINT "CHARACTER NUMBER: ";ch
12200   INPUT"\n" NUMBER TO MOVE (0=REDEFINE): ";q$
12210   ch=ch+q$
12220   IF ch<32 THEN ch=32
12230   IF ch>100 THEN ch=100
12240   IF q$="0" THEN change
12250   IF key=27 THEN EXIT screen
12260 END REPEAT screen
12270 END DEFINE grid

```

Commentary

Lines 12060 – 12090: The outline of an 8*8 box is printed in the top left-hand corner of the screen, using inverse spaces. The character itself is defined on an 8*9 (9 bytes of 8 bits) grid but one of the lines is reserved to maintain the spacing between characters, so we shall work with only eight lines.

Lines 12110 – 12170: These two loops scan each of the binary digits of each of the eight bytes recording the character shape. The variable CH records the number of the character to be extracted — in the INITIALISATION module it is set to 32, or space, the first of the characters in the set. The && operator is used to determine whether a particular digit is '1' or '0'.

In the program itself, the value of the loop variable J is used to create the eight powers of 2 which can be contained in a single byte and then to test whether they are present in the byte being examined by use of &&. If a '1' is found, then the corresponding element of ARRAY is set to 1, indicating the presence of a set pixel. Eventually, the next module REDRAW will be used to draw the picture contained in ARRAY within the box, with an inverse space where there would be a pixel — if not, a space is printed. In this way an enlarged version of the character shape recorded in the bytes is printed.

Lines 12200 – 12230: You can change the character on display by adding to or subtracting from the value of CH, within the range of character codes

from 32 to 127. To move on to another number simply enter a number to add or subtract from the current value of CH (eg 10 or -10).

Testing

This must wait for the entry of the next module, which is used to draw the enlarged character.

Module 2.4.4: Drawing the shape

Nothing complex here, simply a matter of printing a black space in the appropriate position for every element which is set to 1 in ARRAY.

Module 2.4.4: Lines 15000 – 15120

```

15000 REMARK *****
15010 DEFINE PROCEDURE redraw
15020 REMARK *****
15030   FOR i=0 TO 7
15040     FOR j=0 TO 7
15050       AT i,j
15060       PAPER 4
15070       IF array(i,j)=1 THEN PAPER 0
15080       PRINT " "
15090     NEXT j
15100   NEXT i
15110   PAPER 4
15120 END DEFINE redraw

```

Testing

You can now make a proper test of what you have entered so far. Make sure the program is initialised, run the test suggested for the TRANSFER module and then type:

grid[ENTER]

You should see the square drawn and the prompt for an input displayed. By entering positive or negative numbers you should be able to page through the available characters, seeing them displayed in large format on the screen. As with TRANSFER, it would be wise to move the character set back into ROM before proceeding.

Module 2.4.5: A flashing cursor

This is a straightforward module similar to the one you entered in Designer. The only real difference is that here what is being flashed is simply an asterisk.

Module 2.4.5: Lines 14000–14140

```

14000 REMark *****
14010 DEFine PROCedure flash_test
14020 REMark *****
14030 REPeat loop
14040   OVER -1 : INK 4
14050   AT y1,x1 : PRINT "*"
14060   FOR delay=1 TO 20 : NEXT delay
14070   AT y1,x1 : PRINT "*"
14080   FOR delay=1 TO 20 : NEXT delay
14090   in*=INKEY$(1)
14100   INK 0 : OVER 0
14110   IF in*("<") THEN EXIT loop
14120 END REPeat loop
14130 key=CODE(in*)
14140 END DEFine flash_test

```

Commentary

Line 14130: It may seem odd to take the code of a string character to work on, but this deals with a major problem encountered on my particular version of the QL, and that is the inability to distinguish between characters whose codes are 160 apart. Tests for cursor characters and function keys are rendered a nonsense, since they also pick ordinary characters with codes 160 less than the characters being tested for.

Testing

Type:

```

x1=0:y1=0[ENTER]
flash_test[ENTER]

```

and you should see a flashing '*' in the top lefthand corner of the screen. Press a key and the program will stop.

Module 2.4.6: Entering commands

This module combines to present a menu, to move the flashing cursor, to ink in or erase the magnified pixels and to accept commands to manipulate the current character. Instructions for its use are contained in the menu itself.

Module 2.4.6: Lines 13000–13600

```

13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure change
13020 REMark *****
13030   x1=0 : x2=0 : y1=0 : y2=0
13040   AT 10,0 : CLS 2
13050   OPEN #4,scr

```

```

13060 WINDOW #4,320,240,160,16
13070 PAPER #4,4 : INK #4,0
13080 AT #4,1,0
13090 PRINT #4,"'F1' INK IN SQUARE"
13100 PRINT #4,"'F5' BLANK SQUARE"
13110 PRINT #4,"'B' BLOCK SHIFT LEFT"
13120 PRINT #4,"'I' INVERT"
13130 PRINT #4,"'M' MIRROR"
13140 PRINT #4,"'T' TURN"
13150 PRINT #4,"'P' PLACE IN MEMORY"
13160 PRINT #4,"'S' SAVE ON MICRODRIVE"
13170 PRINT #4,"'L' LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE"
13180 PRINT #4,"'A' ANOTHER CHARACTER"
13190 PRINT #4,"'H' CSIZE HEIGHT"
13200 PRINT #4,"'W' CSIZE WIDTH"
13210 PRINT #4,"'ESCAPE' TERMINATE"
13220 PRINT #4,"CURSOR ARROWS TO MOVE"
13230 CLOSE #4
13240 REPeat keys
13250   AT 12,0 : PRINT " "
13260   PRINT " "
13270   CSIZE wide,high
13280   AT 12/(high+1),4 : PRINT CHR$(ch)
13290   CSIZE 0,0
13300   flash_test
13310   IF x1>0 AND key=192 THEN x1=x1-1
13320   IF x1<7 AND key=200 THEN x1=x1+1
13330   IF y1>0 AND key=208 THEN y1=y1-1
13340   IF y1<7 AND key=216 THEN y1=y1+1
13350   IF key=232
13360     array(y1,x1)=1
13370     AT y1,x1 : PAPER 0 : PRINT " "
13380   END IF
13390   IF key=248
13400     array(y1,x1)=0
13410     AT y1,x1 : PAPER 4 : PRINT " "
13420   END IF
13430   SElect ON key
13440     ON key=66 : block_shift
13450     ON key=73 : invert
13460     ON key=77 : mirror
13470     ON key=84 : rotate
13480     ON key=80 : memory
13490     ON key=72 : high=1-high
13500     ON key=87 : wide=wide+1-4*(wide>2)
13510     ON key=83 : store : EXIT keys
13520     ON key=76 : recall : EXIT keys
13530     ON key=65 : EXIT keys
13540     ON key=27
13550       POKE_L char_reg,rom_start
13560       EXIT keys
13570   END SElect
13580   PAPER 4
13590   END REPeat keys
13600 END DEFine change

```

Commentary

Lines 13060 – 13230: The menu for the program is printed in a WINDOW opened to the righthand side of the screen. This has the advantage of making it easier to position the items in the menu without having to use AT, but also ensures that the menu will not become corrupted by changes made to the character set. All we are editing with this program, remember, is the character set for #0 — opening a new window called #4 means an unaffected character set.

Lines 13250 – 13290: The current character is printed underneath the 8*8 square, in the current character size. Since it is printed on the normal screen, #0, if its configuration in memory is changed, its appearance will change.

Lines 13310 – 13340: These lines detect the use of the cursor keys and alter the coordinates of the flashing cursor.

Lines 13350 – 13420: The tests for the two function keys F1 and F5.

Lines 13490 – 13500: Pressing the H or W key shuttles through the legal values for the CSIZE command. The reason for allowing the user to change the CSIZE of the character displayed by lines 13250 – 13290 is that the QL interprets character data differently according to the CSIZE of the character — setting pixels in columns 1, 7 and 8 has unpredictable results. When designing a character to be used at a larger CSIZE than 0,0 the H and W keys should be used to view it at the appropriate size.

Line 13540: If the program is terminated properly, through the menu, the address of the ROM character set is POKEd back into the register which tells the QL where to look for character data. It is important to terminate the program *only* through the menu, since otherwise running the program again could result in the system becoming confused as to the correct value for ROM_START and so on.

Testing

Start the program with 'grid' and select a character. When it has been drawn you should be able to enter '0' and see the menu displayed. You should be able to move the flashing cursor around the square without corrupting it. Pressing the function key F1 will ink in a new pixel, while F5 will erase one. None of the other commands, with the exception of 'A' to return to the previous module, will have any effect apart from stopping the program with an error message. Note that throughout the use of this menu, *only capital letters will be accepted as inputs*, lower case letters will have no effect.

Module 2.4.7: Creating an inverse character

We now turn to a series of modules which make the task of editing a character a little easier by performing operations on the whole character, like turning it into its mirror image or rotating it through 90 degrees. The current module simply creates an inverse of the existing character by swapping all the ones and zeros in ARRAY and then calling REDRAW. Any pixel which was set will be erased, and any position which was blank will have a pixel printed in it.

There is a difficulty about using this module, however. Although the program gives you the ability to edit the character on the 8*8 grid, bits 7, 1 and 0, that is to say the leftmost and two rightmost columns, are not used by the QL for the character. Setting pixels in these columns can lead to unpredictable results when the character is displayed, with chunks of it disappearing completely. This needs to be remembered when inverting characters, which will usually mean inking in all the pixels in those columns. Unless you are looking for special effects, you may want to go through the character after inversion, clearing columns 1, 7 and 8.

Module 2.4.7: Lines 17000 – 17130

```
17000 REMark *****
17010 DEFine PROCedure invert
17020 REMark *****
17030 FOR i=0 TO 7
17040   FOR j=0 TO 7
17050     IF array(i,j)=0
17060       array(i,j)=1
17070     ELSE
17080       array(i,j)=0
17090     END IF
17100   NEXT j
17110 NEXT i
17120 redraw
17130 END DEFine invert
```

Testing

Start the program with 'grid' and enter the edit mode. When the menu is displayed, press 'I' and you should see an inverse character created. Now press 'I' again and the character should be restored to normal. Note that this only refers to the magnified character — not the normal-sized one to the right of the 8*8 square. The normal-sized character will only change if you decide to enter your edited character into memory using a later module.

Module 2.4.8: Copying the array

Before we go on to the other routines to manipulate a character, we shall need this one which copies an array called TEMP into ARRAY. TEMP will

be used as a temporary storage place when manipulations are being made on ARRAY.

Module 2.4.8: Lines 16000 – 16080

```
16000 REMark *****
16010 DEFine PROCedure array_copy
16020 REMark *****
16030 FOR i=0 TO 7
16040 FOR j=0 TO 7
16050 array(i,j)=temp(i,j)
16060 NEXT j
16070 NEXT i
16080 END DEFine array_copy
```

Module 2.4.9: Creating a mirror image

This module takes the character displayed and 'turns it over' as if it were being viewed in a mirror. Unlike the INVERT module, which operated directly on ARRAY, this one uses the array TEMP to store the result until the transformation is completed. The reason for this is that when moving items around within the 8*8 square, the program would be overwriting the original contents and so would be come confused as to what had to be moved and what had already been moved.

Module 2.4.9: Lines 18000 – 18130

```
18000 REMark *****
18010 DEFine PROCedure mirror
18020 REMark *****
18030 DIM temp(7,7)
18040 FOR i=0 TO 7
18050 FOR j=0 TO 7
18060 IF array(i,j)=1
18070 temp(i,7-j)=1
18080 END IF
18090 NEXT j
18100 NEXT i
18110 array_copy
18120 redraw
18130 END DEFine mirror
```

Commentary

Lines 18060 – 18080: The lines which are being read from left to right in ARRAY are copied into TEMP from right to left. Note that there is only a need to copy the elements set to 1, since TEMP was filled with zeros when it was dimensioned at the beginning of the module.

Testing

Start the program with 'grid' and call up the editing menu. Press 'M' and,

after a pause while the character is being copied into the array, you should see it printed in mirrored form.

Module 2.4.10: Turning a character

If you think of the character you are editing as being printed on a sheet of transparent plastic, then apart from holding it at an angle, everything you could do with that plastic sheet can be accomplished by a combination of mirroring the character and/or turning it through 90 degrees one or more times. The current module again uses the array TEMP, but this time to turn the character in the 8*8 square 90 degrees anti-clockwise.

Module 2.4.10: Lines 19000 – 19130

```
19000 REMark *****
19010 DEFine PROCedure rotate
19020 REMark *****
19030 DIM temp(7,7)
19040 FOR i=0 TO 7
19050 FOR j=0 TO 7
19060 IF array(i,j)=1
19070 temp(7-j,i)=1
19080 END IF
19090 NEXT j
19100 NEXT i
19110 array_copy
19120 redraw
19130 END DEFine rotate
```

Commentary

Lines 19060 – 19080: Rotation is achieved by reversing the two coordinates I and J when an element is copied into TEMP, and also inverting J so that 7 – J is used.

Testing

Start the program with 'grid', call up the editing menu and then press 'T'. After a pause, the character will be reprinted, turned through 90 degrees. If you press 'T' three more times, the character should be restored to its original position. Try experimenting with combinations of mirror, turn and inverse until you are familiar with their effects.

Module 2.4.11: Shifting a character left

One final simple operation is provided by this module, which allows a character to be shifted to the left by one position. If pixels move off the lefthand edge of the square, they reappear at the right. In fact, by rotating the character before it is shifted and then rotating it again, characters can be shifted in any direction within the square.

Module 2.4.11: Lines 20000 – 20130

```

20000 REMark *****
20010 DEFine PROCedure block_shift
20020 REMark *****
20030 DIM temp(7,7)
20040 FOR i=0 TO 7
20050   FOR j=0 TO 7
20060     IF array(i,j)=1
20070       temp(i,j-1+8*(j=0))=1
20080     END IF
20090   NEXT j
20100 NEXT i
20110 array_copy
20120 redraw
20130 END DEFine block_shift

```

Module 2.4.12: Entering an edited character into memory

So far, you have been able to manipulate the magnified character in the 8*8 square until it perhaps bears no relation to the original pattern. All of this, however, has made absolutely no difference to the normal-sized version of the character which is printed underneath the 8*8 square. The changes you have made have not yet been entered into the character memory and they will not be entered until you are satisfied with what you have created. Once you *have* arrived at what you want, however, this module will make the pattern in the square into part of your customised character set.

Module 2.4.12: Lines 21000 – 21100

```

21000 REMark *****
21010 DEFine PROCedure memory
21020 REMark *****
21030 FOR i=0 TO 7
21040   byte=0
21050   FOR j=0 TO 7
21060     byte=byte + 2^(7-j)*(array(i,j)=1)
21070   NEXT j
21080   POKE char_start+(ch-32)*9+i,byte
21090 NEXT i
21100 END DEFine memory

```

Commentary

Line 21060: The effect of this line is to take a position in which there is a '1' in ARRAY and to translate it into a binary digit in a number which will represent the row of eight elements, zeros and ones, in which it lies. Each element set to 1 will represent a power of 2 in the same way as when we earlier analysed how a binary number could be used to represent one line across the character. When each of the eight lines has been translated into a number, it is POKed into the character memory at a position corresponding to one of the lines across the current character.

Testing

Start the program and move the character pointer on to character 65, which is the 'A'. Move into edit mode and turn the character twice — if you turn it only once and store it in memory you will turn the letter A into two dots, since the top of the letter will be in the forbidden lefthand column. Now press 'P' and watch the screen. The 'A' beneath the 8*8 square is transformed so that it is turned on its side. The QL is taking its character information from your customised set. It is wise to remember, when editing characters, that unless you want customised lettering, it is often best to edit either upper or lower case letters only. Making too many changes to letters and numbers can result in a situation where you can no longer understand what the program is saying to you!

Module 2.4.13: Storing the character set

Having edited the character set, we now want to be able to keep it so that it may be used in future, otherwise the whole exercise is rather pointless. This module stores your customised characters on microdrive. The module is simpler than that employed in many other programs, since what we are saving is an easily identifiable block of memory and it can be sent to the microdrive with the simple use of SBYTES.

Module 2.4.13: Lines 22000 – 22090

```

22000 REMark *****
22010 DEFine PROCedure store
22020 REMark *****
22030 CLS
22040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
22050 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:";file$
22060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
22070 DELETE tfile$
22080 SBYTES "mdv1_" & file$,user_start,876
22090 END DEFine store

```

Testing

Having edited a few characters and placed them into memory, call up this module to save them on to microdrive. The only check at this moment is that the module executes without producing any kind of error. After the next module has been entered you will be able to reload the character set to check that it has been properly stored.

Module 2.4.14: Reloading a character set

Having stored the character set on disk, this module performs the task of reloading the character data, using LBYTES. Note that, in order for this

module to work, the value of USER_START must have been set. This is, of course, done automatically in the present program but, once you have designed a customised character set, you will want to be able to load it back into memory for the use of other programs. This module will do the job for you, provided that you have chosen the place in memory where the character data is to go, using RESPR.

Module 2.4.14: Lines 23000 – 23080

```
23000 REMark *****
23010 DEFine PROCedure recall
23020 REMark *****
23030 CLS
23040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
23050 DIR mdv1_
23060 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:";file$
23070 LBYTES "mdv1_" & file$,user_start
23080 END DEFine recall
```

Testing

You should now be able to reload the character set which you SAVED as part of the test of the previous module by pressing 'L' in the character edit mode. Before you reload what you have just saved, do ensure that you are back with the normal (unedited) character set or it will be impossible to tell whether different characters have been loaded from disk.

Module 2.4.15: The control module

A standard module.

Module 2.4.15: Lines 10000 – 10090

```
10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine PROCedure do (fresh)
10020 REMark *****
10030 CLS : CLS#0
10040 OVER 0
10050 IF fresh=1 THEN initialise
10060 POKE_L char_reg,user_start
10070 grid
10080 STOP
10090 END DEFine do
```

Testing

The whole program should now be available to you. In addition, if everything works satisfactorily here, you will know that you are safe to lift modules out to enable you to employ customised characters in other programs.

PROGRAM 2.5: SOUND DEMO

Program function

Sound Demo, consisting of two modules, can hardly be dignified with the name of a program. It is a tool, designed to allow you to explore the QL's rather confusing set of sound commands and to get the most from them. I have refrained from giving advice as to the way the sound parameters can be set for the simple reason that, like the writers of the QL manual who simply advise experiment, I have found them not to be consistent in their effects. With Sound Demo, however, you will at least be able to experiment with ease, rather than continually enter the relatively complex BEEP command.

SOUND DEMONSTRATION

COMMANDS AVAILABLE :

- 0> Stop demo
- 1> Sound note
- 2> Alter pitch 1
- 3> Alter pitch 2
- 4> Alter gradient X
- 5> Alter gradient Y
- 6> Alter wrap
- 7> Alter fuzz
- 8> Alter random
- 9> Stop note

```
Pitch1=5      Pitch2=5
Grad X=0      Grad Y=0
Wrap = 0      Fuzz = 0
Random=0
```

Figure 2.6: Screen Display from Sound Demo.

Module 2.5.1: Displaying parameters

The module is designed to clear an area of screen towards the bottom and to print out a clear display of the current settings of the various sound parameters. The variables on which it functions will be explained during the course of the commentary on the next module.

Module 2.5.1: Lines 2000 – 2100

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure parameters
2020 REMark *****
2030 BLOCK 448,45,0,155,4
2040 PAPER 4 : INK 0
2050 AT 16,0
2060 PRINT,"Pitch1=";tp1,"Pitch2=";tp2
2070 PRINT,"Grad X=";tg1,"Grad Y=";tg2
```

```

2000 PRINT,"Wrap = ";twr,"Fuzz = ";tfu
2090 PRINT," Random=";tra
2100 END DEFine parameters

```

Module 2.5.2: A menu for experimenting

This is the main module, which is designed to present the user with a range of choices as to the note characteristics to be changed and to allow the sounding of the results.

Module 2.5.2: Lines 1000 – 1610

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 DEFine PROCedure demo
1020 REMark *****
1030 p1=5 : p2=5 : g1=0 : g2=0
1040 wr=0 : fu=0 : ra=0
1050 tp1=p1 : tp2=p2
1060 tg1=g1 : tg2=g2
1070 twr=wr : tfu=fu : tra=ra
1080 PAPER 2 : CLS
1100 PAPER 0 : INK 7
1120 AT 0,9 : PRINT "SOUND DEMONSTRATION"
1130 PAPER 2
1140 PRINT\ "COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
1150 PRINT\ " 0) Stop demo"
1160 PRINT " 1) Sound note"
1170 PRINT " 2) Alter pitch 1"
1180 PRINT " 3) Alter pitch 2"
1190 PRINT " 4) Alter gradient X"
1200 PRINT " 5) Alter gradient Y"
1210 PRINT " 6) Alter wrap"
1220 PRINT " 7) Alter fuzz"
1230 PRINT " 8) Alter random"
1240 PRINT " 9) Stop note"
1250 REPEAT response
1260 CLS#0
1270 parameters
1280 REPEAT number
1290 q#=INKEY$(1)
1300 IF q#>="0" AND q#<="9" THEN EXIT number
1310 END REPEAT number
1320 q=q#
1330 SELECT ON q
1340 ON q=0
1350 BEEP
1360 STOP
1370 ON q=1
1380 BEEP 0,p1,p2,g1,g2,wr,fu,ra
1390 tp1=p1 : tp2=p2
1400 tg1=g1 : tg2=g2
1410 twr=wr : tfu=fu
1420 tra=ra
1430 ON q=2

```

```

1440 INPUT#0,"PITCH 1: ";p1
1450 ON q=3
1460 INPUT#0,"PITCH 2: ";p2
1470 ON q=4
1480 INPUT#0,"GRADIENT X: ";g1
1490 ON q=5
1500 INPUT#0,"GRADIENT Y: ";g2
1510 ON q=6
1520 INPUT#0,"WRAP (1-15): ";wr
1530 ON q=7
1540 INPUT#0,"FUZZ (0-15): ";fu
1550 ON q=8
1560 INPUT#0,"RAND (-32768 to 32767): ";
ra
1570 ON q=9
1580 BEEP
1590 END SELECT
1600 END REPEAT response
1610 END DEFine demo

```

Commentary

Lines 1030 – 1040: The initial settings for the demonstration. P1 and P2 are the two pitches. G1, G2, WR, FU and RA refer to GRADIENTS 1 and 2, WRAP, FUZZ and RANDOM.

Lines 1050 – 1070: The variables beginning with T represent temporary copies of the active parameter settings.

Lines 1080 – 1240: There is only one main screen for the demonstration. This menu remains in the centre of the screen at all times.

Lines 1280 – 1310: Since there are only 10 choices on the menu, they can all be accessed with a single key press, using INKEY\$.

Lines 1340 – 1360: Pressing '0' results in the current note being silenced and the demonstration terminating. If you stop the program using CTRL/SPACE the current note will continue to sound until you enter BEEP.

Lines 1370 – 1420: Pressing '1' results in the note defined by the current parameters being sounded. The temporary copies are made at this point because the other program functions, which allow the note parameters to be changed, do not immediately affect the note being sounded. It is possible to change every parameter without changing the sound of the note until '1' is pressed again. The temporary variables record the parameters actually being played, while the main variables may have been changed.

Lines 1430 – 1560: Pressing '2' to '8' gives the user the opportunity to change one of the parameters.

Lines 1570 – 1580: Pressing '9' silences the current note without terminating the program.

Testing

The only way to test the program is to play with it by entering 'demo' and messing around with parameters. In practice, I renumber Sound so that it will fit in with the next program, Music. This allows me to try out different combinations of parameters before they are entered into a tune to be played.

PROGRAM 2.6: MUSIC

Program function

We have already noted, in the comments on the last program, that the QL's sound commands are complex and a little confusing. The purpose of Music is to take the effort out of the programming of simple tunes by allowing the user to specify musical notation in an easily understood format, making full use of the various controls possible over the notes produced. The program adopts a 'two pass' approach, first processing the tune specified and translating it into a series of numbers, then using the numbers themselves to activate the BEEP command. The advantage of this method is that music can be played more quickly, without gaps creeping in when large numbers of short notes are to be played.

Module 2.6.1: A table of note values

Musically, microcomputers can be divided into two categories: those whose sound commands are set up so that they can be programmed in a comprehensible way, and those that aren't. Unfortunately, the QL falls into the latter group so, instead of being able to specify a note, either as a number or in some kind of musical notation, a value bearing a vague (and inverse) relation to frequency has to be used. If we are going to program music, then we need to be able to specify notes. The table contained in these lines of data represents my best attempt to translate two chromatic octaves into the values used by the BEEP command. The two octaves are in C major and represent about as far as the QL can usefully go.

Module 2.6.1: Lines 5000–5050

```
5000 REMark *****
5010 REMark note values
5020 REMark *****
5030 DATA 78,73,69,64,60,56,53,49
5040 DATA 42,40,37,34,32,30,28
5050 DATA 26,24,22,20,17,16,14,13
```

Module 2.6.2: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module.

Module 2.6.2: Lines 2000–2100

```
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure initialise
2020 REMark *****
2030 DIM notes%(1,11),play%(1000,7),temp(7)
2040 RESTORE 5000
2050 FOR i=0 TO 1
2060 FOR j=0 TO 11
2070 READ notes%(i,j)
2080 NEXT j
2090 NEXT i
2100 END DEFine initialise
```

Commentary

Line 2030: NOTES% will be used to store the values of the 24 notes the program can deal with. PLAY% will contain the tune in its final form, up to 1000 notes. TEMP will hold the values associated with a particular note as it is translated.

Lines 2040–2090: The 24 note values are read into the two sides on NOTES%, representing the two octaves.

Module 2.6.3: The data for the tune

Before the program can begin to process anything, it must have a tune to work on. Tunes are entered in the form of DATA statements, for ease of examination and editing. The notation will be explained during the course of the commentary on the next module. Note that, due to the QL's limitation in only being able to READ strings enclosed in quotes, the whole of each DATA line is enclosed in quotes. It would be simpler from the programming point of view to enclose each item separately but would make the entry of the tune itself far more laborious.

Module 2.6.3: Lines 6000–6100

```
6000 REMark *****
6010 REMark data for tune
6020 REMark *****
6030 DATA "02,L3,1,L1,1,L4,3,L4,1,6"
6040 DATA "L8,5"
6050 DATA "02,L3,1,L1,1,L4,3,L4,1,8"
6060 DATA "L8,6"
6070 DATA "L3,1,L1,1,L4,12,9,6,5,3"
6080 DATA "L3,10,L1,10,L4,9,6,8"
6090 DATA "L8,6"
6100 DATA "end"
```

Module 2.6.4: Translating the tune

This is the module which performs the most laborious part of the task of playing a tune, the translation from the easily-understood format, in which the music is recorded in the DATA statements, into a series of numbers which represent parameters for the BEEP command. The module looks complicated but, once analysed, it boils down to a series of simple decisions as to what a particular set of characters in the tune DATA means and then one or more calculations to translate that instruction into a BEEP parameter.

Module 2.6.4: Lines 3000–3700

```

3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure process
3020 REMark *****
3030 RESTORE 6000
3040 count=0
3050 pitch_number=1
3060 octave=1
3070 next_note=0
3080 REPEAT get_note
3090 READ temp#
3100 IF temp#="end" OR temp#="END" THEN EXIT
   get_note
3110 :
3120 :
3130 REPEAT slice
3140 comma="," INSTR temp#
3150 IF comma=0
3160 chars=LEN(temp#)
3170 ELSE
3180 chars=comma-1
3190 END IF
3200 t#=temp#(1 TO chars)
3210 IF chars<LEN(temp#)
3220 temp#=temp#(chars+2 TO)
3230 END IF
3240 IF "0" & t#>0
3250 temp(pitch_number-1)=notes%(octave,
   t#-1)
3260 next_note=1
3270 END IF
3280 IF t#(1)="0" OR t#(1)="o"
3290 octave=t#(2)-1
3300 END IF
3310 IF t#(1)="L" OR t#(1)="1"
3320 temp(7)=t#(2 TO)
3330 END IF
3340 IF t#="W" OR t#="w"
3350 temp(2)=t#(2 TO)
3360 END IF
3370 IF t#(1)="X" OR t#(1)="x"
3380 temp(3)=t#(2 TO)

```

```

3390 END IF
3400 IF t#(1)="Y" OR t#(1)="y"
3410 temp(4)=t#(2 TO)
3420 END IF
3430 IF t#(1)="F" OR t#(1)="f"
3440 temp(5)=t#(2 TO)
3450 END IF
3460 IF t#(1)="R" OR t#(1)="r"
3470 temp(6)=t#(2 TO)
3480 END IF
3490 IF t#(1)="P" OR t#(1)="p"
3500 pitch_number=t#(2)
3510 END IF
3520 IF t#="S" OR t#="s"
3530 temp(0)="-1"
3540 next_note=1
3550 END IF
3560 :
3570 :
3580 IF next_note
3590 FOR i=0 TO 7
3600 play%(count,i)=temp(i)
3610 NEXT i
3620 count=count+1
3630 next_note=0
3640 END IF
3650 :
3660 :
3670 IF comma=0 THEN EXIT slice
3680 END REPEAT slice
3690 END REPEAT get_note
3700 END DEFine process

```

Commentary

Line 3040: The variable COUNT will be used to record the number of the note currently being worked on. This is not the same as the number of the item of DATA being read. If the tune DATA specifies a series of changes to the note quality, such as GRAD and WRAP, these do not affect the value of COUNT. It is only when the note value is encountered that COUNT is incremented.

Line 3050: The number of the pitch which will be changed for each note — for the purposes of the program, the two pitches are numbered as 1 and 2.

Line 3060: The octave in which a note to be played will fall. The two octaves are specified as 1 or 2.

Line 3070: NEXT__NOTE is used to decide whether COUNT needs to be incremented. If, after translation of an item from the tune, NEXT__NOTE is set to 1, then a note has been specified and COUNT is incremented.

Lines 3090 – 3100: The whole of a DATA line is READ into TEMP\$. The single word 'END' on a DATA line indicates the end of the tune.

Lines 3140 – 3230: Using the INSTR function, the program looks for the first comma in TEMP\$, indicating the end of the first tune item. If no comma is found then the whole of TEMP\$ is taken as the item to be processed. If a comma is found, the characters up to the comma are transferred to TS, which is the item to be processed and that item is sliced out of TEMP\$ so that it will not be processed twice.

Lines 3240 – 3270: If the tune item is a number, then placing a zero in front of it will not change its value — if it is not a number then the zero will prevent the program from crashing when we try to extract a value from it. When a number is encountered, it is taken as an instruction to play a note of the given value within the current octave. There are 12 notes within each octave, each placed a semitone apart — these provide all the notes used with an octave in western forms of music. The note value is placed into TEMP%, from where it will be eventually transferred to ARRAY%.

Lines 3280 – 3300: If the first letter of the tune item is O, then the following number is taken as an instruction to reset the octave to either 1 or 2, though note that the program thinks of them as 0 and 1.

Lines 3310 – 3330: If the first character is L, then the following number is taken as the length of the notes to be played until further notice. The note length must be set up at the start of the tune.

Lines 3340 – 3480: Numbers preceded by W, X, Y, F or R will be used to set wrap, grad_x, grad_y, fuzz or random.

Lines 3490 – 3510: 0 or 1 preceded by P will change the pitch number which is currently being acted upon. Note that with the program as currently set up, you cannot change both pitch parameters between one note and the next.

Lines 3520 – 3550: If the item consists of S, then a silence of the current note length will be played.

Lines 3580 – 3640: The contents of ARRAY%(COUNT), the current note, are set equal to the contents of TEMP%. Note that this only happens when COUNT is incremented. All changes to parameters will be fed into the same line of ARRAY%, in other words changes to fuzz, wrap, etc., will all affect the current line, since COUNT is not incremented by them.

Line 3670: If COMMA is equal to zero then there are no more items in the current line of DATA and another line must be read.

Testing

Type:

```
initialise[ENTER]
process[ENTER]
```

and you should be able to complete the analysis of the tune without generating any errors. Of course you will not *hear* anything yet, since we have not added the module which actually plays the tune.

Module 2.6.5: Playing the tune

We now come to the module which makes it all worthwhile, since the current module has the job of taking the values stored in ARRAY% and playing a tune based on them.

Module 2.6.5: Lines 4000 – 4130

```
4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure play (start)
4020 REMark *****
4030 FOR i=start TO count-1
4040   IF play%(i,0)<>-1
4050     BEEP 0,play%(i,0),play%(i,1),play%
      (i,2),play%(i,3),play%(i,4),play%
      (i,5),play%(i,6)
4060   END IF
4070   FOR delay=1 TO 50*play%(i,7)
4080     NEXT delay
4090     BEEP
4100     t%=INKEY$(0)
4110     IF t%<>" " THEN RETURN
4120   NEXT i
4130 END DEFine play
```

Commentary

Line 4010: This module is called by entering 'play' followed by a value which is taken as the first note in ARRAY% to be played. This allows parts of a tune to be heard during the process of tune development. If changes are made to a tune, these will not be registered by the PLAY module until PROCESS has first been called to translate the changed DATA.

Line 4030: The number of notes to be played has been automatically stored in COUNT.

Lines 4040 – 4060: The two possibilities dealt with by these lines are that a note is to be played or that there is to be a silence. If a note is to be played, a BEEP of infinite duration (BEEP 0) is commenced, using the parameters contained in ARRAY%. If the first parameter in ARRAY(I) is minus one, however, then a silence is called for and no note is played.

Lines 4070 – 4080: The length of the note or silence is dictated by the length of the delay loop. Using the loop variable to create the length of the loop allows more ease in specifying the note lengths than if the huge values necessary for BEEP were used directly.

Line 4090: At the end of the period specified for the delay, any note which is being sounded is switched off by use of BEEP without parameters attached.

Lines 4100 – 4110: The playing of the tune can be stopped at any point by pressing a key.

Testing

Provided that the program has already been initialised and the tune processed, entering PLAY 0 will play the tune 'Happy Birthday To You'. Entering PLAY followed by a parameter other than zero will start the tune off at another point. You can now try changing the DATA statements which make up the tune to see what difference they make.

Module 2.6.6: The control module

A standard module.

Module 2.6.6: Lines 1000 – 1060

```
1000 REMark *****
1010 DEFINE PROCEDURE do
1020 REMark *****
1030   initialise
1040   process
1050   play 0
1060 END DEFINE do
```

Using the program

You can use this program on its own or as a tool to supply music for other programs. In order to do this, all you need to do is to write microdrive STORE and RECALL modules to store the variable COUNT and the contents of ARRAY%. Once a tune has been developed and processed, store the information on microdrive. A subsequent program, which would have to include RECALL and PLAY modules, would then summon up the contents of ARRAY% from microdrive and play the tune exactly as the current program would.

CHAPTER 3

Seriouser and Seriouser

At this stage in your progress you should be becoming more familiar with the capabilities of your QL and with some of the techniques needed to put it to work for you. The time has come, therefore, to look at some substantial programs which will allow your QL to do what microcomputers do best — handle, sort and retrieve information for their owners.

In doing this we shall, in some ways, be re-inventing the wheel supplied by Psion in the form of Quill, Archive, Easel, and Abacus since as a package these four can cover most tasks imaginable. Why then write applications packages in BASIC — well there are two answers to that. First, and I think most importantly, is the question of who runs your QL, you or a group of software writers you've never met. This may seem a trivial question but the fact is that only you can decide whether you are going to run a system which responds exactly to *your* needs, taking the best from commercial programs and your own inventions, or whether you are going to limit yourself entirely to what someone else thinks that you need. Without some practice in developing and writing your own applications, you are going to be left with a black box which forces you to become just another consumer, not the creative originator that most micro owners want to be.

The second reason, however, is more immediately practical, and that is that there is no such thing as a perfect software package for every purpose. There will many occasions in the use of the QL when a simple BASIC package will serve you far better for a limited purpose than a sophisticated commercial package. The programs in this chapter are, I think, cases in point but even if they do not fit your needs, the techniques contained within them will allow you to tackle your own applications programming with greater confidence.

The programs included in this chapter are:

UNIFILE: A powerful personal filing system capable of storing a wide variety of information for instant recall.

NNUMBER: A program which creates a dictionary of Names and Numbers for almost anything you wish, allowing the user to create invoices, stock valuations or even a calorie count of the day's menu.

MULTIQ: A multiple choice test generator.

PROGRAM 3.1: UNIFILE**Program function**

Unifile is a program which has been developed over the years in the 'Working Micro' books. Readers of previous books have written to say that they are using it in their businesses, to teach schoolchildren about the way micros handle information, to help with clubs and voluntary organisations or simply to keep track of their books and records at home. This current version for the QL uses some fairly sophisticated and extremely fast data structures, to make it an ideal card-index type tool for quantities of information capable of being held in the QL's memory at one time.

```

Entry No: 1
Name: Smith, John

Commands available:

'ENTER' leaves field unchanged
Input item to replace one shown
'DDD' deletes whole record
'ZZZ' leaves record unchanged
Which do you require:

```

Figure 3.1: Typical Display in Unifile's Search Mode.

The new concepts introduced in this program include:

- 1) Binary searching.
- 2) Packing items into continuous strings.
- 3) Pointer arrays

Module 3.1.1: Setting up the structure of the file

Many books aimed at the home micro owner offer inferior filing programs which are extremely inflexible in use. It is built into the program that, every time the user stores something, it will be under the headings, Name, Address, Phone No., or some similar structure. The beauty of Unifile is that, while it will certainly allow you to use such a structure, it will also let you create other files with very different structures — perhaps with one heading, perhaps with 10 — without making any changes to the program itself. Unifile is what I like to call a chameleon program: one that adapts to

a variety of different uses, reacting to the user in different ways depending on the task that it is performing at the time.

The purpose of this first module is to initialise some variables, and to allow data to be recalled from microdrive, but most importantly to allow the user to set up the original file exactly as desired.

Module 3.1.1: Lines 10000 — 10260

```

10000 REMARK *****
10010 REMARK initialise
10020 REMARK *****
10030 PAPER 5 : INK 1
10040 CLS : CLS#0
10050 AT 1,15 : PRINT "UNIFILE"
10060 INPUT\ "Load from Microdrive (y/n)";q#
10070 IF q#="y" OR q#="Y"
10080   recall
10090 ELSE
10100   f_total=0
10110   empty$=""
10120   INPUT\ "How many fields in a record: ";
10130   n_fields\
10140   DIM fields(n_fields-1)
10150   FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
10160     INPUT\ "Name for field " & (i+1) &
10170     ": ";field$(i)
10180     INPUT "Length of field: ";fields(i)
10190     f_total=f_total+fields(i)
10200   NEXT i
10210   lines=INT(50000/f_total)
10220   DIM array$(lines,f_total)
10230   DIM new_temp$(n_fields,38)
10240   array$(0)=FILL$(CHR$(200),38)
10250   array$(1)=FILL$("z",100)
10260   ptr$="00000001"

```

Commentary

Lines 10120 — 10190: Part of the secret of Unifile's flexibility. For each 'record', which you can think of as a filing card if it helps you, you can define for yourself how many 'fields', or individual headings, will appear in the record. If you were storing your record collection, you might use headings like: TRACK, ALBUM, COMPOSER, ARTIST, LENGTH. In this case you would specify five fields and then input the names of the five. In future, whenever you use Unifile to store or retrieve information on your record collection, you will be asked to input an item of information under each of those headings. For each field, you will also be asked to specify the length of the field in characters — in future uses of the file, you will be limited to that number of characters when inputting information to

the particular field. The overall names given to each field, and their maximum lengths, are stored in the two arrays `FIELD$` and `FIELDS`, which are dimensioned according to the specified number of fields, recorded in `N_FIELDS`.

Lines 10200 – 10210: Having defined the sizes of all the fields and therefore of the whole record, it is possible to determine how many such records will fit into memory. I have allocated 50,000 bytes of the total memory to the main data file, which is conservative. There are other variables, apart from the program itself, to be stored but you will probably be able to increase the 50,000 substantially for most applications. For files containing a large number of very short records, however, the associated variables will take up a proportionately larger part of the memory and you may even find that 50,000 is too much for the main file. Experimentation will quickly reveal the best figures for your particular usage.

Lines 10230 – 10240: In any program which inserts data into an array in order, some provision has to be made for the recognition of the beginning and end of the data when new items are being inserted. One simple method of achieving this is to set up the file with two dummy entries which, according to the order to be imposed, will always fall at the beginning and end of any sensible data. The use of a string of zs for the final item is self-explanatory, but the `CHR$(200)` in line 10230 needs some explanation. The problem encountered in setting up an entry which will automatically be seen as the first item by any alphabetical search is that, on early versions of the QL, the string comparison facilities are a total mess. According to the version of the QL on which the programs in this book were written, any normal printing character outside the ranges 0–9, A–Z and a–z is actually greater than any character inside those ranges. This means that a space (character code 32), which is normally treated as the lowest normal printing character when string comparisons are done, is considered greater than 'z', normally the highest normal printing character. You can verify for yourself whether this applies to your machine by typing:

```
print " ">"z"
```

If the result is zero, then you can ignore the rest of this part of the commentary and replace `CHR$(200)` with a space (`CHR$(32)`). If, however, the result printed is '1', then your machine suffers from the same limitation as mine and the space character cannot be used. `CHR$(200)` has been adopted to replace the space because it is one of a limited range of characters which are considered by the QL to be alphabetically less than the '0' character. I am less than happy about the compromise because `CHR$(200)` is a cursor control character and its use may have unintended side effects on future QL versions. It is to be hoped that the string comparison facilities will soon have been sorted out and the space character can assume its rightful role.

Module 3.1.2: The menu

A standard menu module.

Module 3.1.2: Lines 11000 – 11360

```
11000 REMark *****
11010 REMark menu
11020 REMark *****
11030 REPEAT display
11040 PAPER 4 : INK 0 : CSIZE 1,1
11050 CLS : CLS#0
11060 AT 1,10 : PRINT "UNIFILE" : CSIZE 0,0
11070 PRINT\ " COMMANDS AVAILABLE: "
11080 PRINT\ " 1) INPUT NEW ITEMS"
11090 PRINT " 2) SEARCH/DELETE"
11100 PRINT " 3) DATA FILES"
11110 PRINT " 4) STOP"
11120 INPUT\ " WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Z
11130 IF (Z=2 OR Z=3) AND LEN(ptr#)=8
11140 PRINT "NO DATA YET"
11150 t$=INKEY$(-1)
11160 Z=0
11170 END IF
11180 SELECT ON Z
11190 ON Z=1 : n_items
11210 ON Z=2 : user_search
11230 ON Z=3 : store
11310 ON Z=4
11320 CLS
11330 PRINT#0,"Filing system closed"
11340 STOP
11350 END SELECT
11360 END REPEAT display
```

Module 3.1.3: Storing data

As you begin to develop more complex programs, whether from this book or on your own, you will find it more and more desirable to enter the data file module as early as possible. The reason for this is that it is only possible to make proper tests of Unifile by entering fairly considerable quantities of data. Since you are bound to make mistakes and will need to change lines, you are faced with the prospect of having to re-enter data which may have been corrupted time and time again as the program is being developed. The answer is to store it on microdrive from the very earliest of stages, recalling information from the microdrive to make your tests if necessary.

The variables contained in these two modules will be explained during the course of the program.

Module 3.1.3: Lines 20000 – 20320

```
20000 REMark *****
20010 DEFINE PROCEDURE store
```



```

20020 REMark *****
20030 CLS
20040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
20050 INPUT\\ " Name of data file:";file$
20060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
20070 DELETE tfile$
20080 OPEN_NEW #8,"mdv1_" & file$
20090 PRINT #8,LEN(ptr$)
20100 IF LEN(ptr$)<>0
20110   FOR i=1 TO LEN(ptr$) STEP 100
20120     PRINT #8,ptr$(i TO i+99)
20130   NEXT i
20140 END IF
20150 PRINT #8,LEN(empty$)
20160 IF LEN(empty$)<>0
20170   FOR i=1 TO LEN(empty$) STEP 100
20180     PRINT #8,empty$(i TO i+99)
20190   NEXT i
20200 END IF
20210 PRINT #8,f_total
20220 PRINT #8,lines
20230 PRINT #8,n_fields
20240 FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
20250   PRINT #8,field$(i)
20260   PRINT #8,fields(i)
20270 NEXT i
20280 FOR i=1 TO (LEN(ptr$)+LEN(empty$))/4
20290   PRINT#8,array$(i-1)
20300 NEXT i
20310 CLOSE#8
20320 END DEFine store

```

Module 3.1.4: Recalling data

This is a standard data recall module with the necessary addition of facilities to dimension arrays. You will remember from the initialisation module that the arrays in Unifile are not of a fixed size, but vary according to the kind of structure set up by the user. The same approach is necessary when picking up items from microdrive. Only once the variables which describe the structure have been recalled, can the arrays be dimensioned.

Module 3.1.4: Lines 21000 – 21340

```

21000 REMark *****
21010 DEFine PROCedure recall
21020 REMark *****
21030 CLS
21040 ptr$="" : empty$=""
21050 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
21060 DIR mdv1_
21070 INPUT\\ " Name of data file:";file$
21080 OPEN_IN #8,"mdv1_" & file$
21090 INPUT #8,chars

```

```

21100 IF chars<>0
21110   FOR i=1 TO chars STEP 100
21120     INPUT#8,temp$
21130     ptr$=ptr$ & temp$
21140   NEXT i
21150 END IF
21160 INPUT #8,chars
21170 IF chars<>0
21180   FOR i=1 TO chars STEP 100
21190     INPUT #8,temp$
21200     empty$=empty$ & temp$
21210   NEXT i
21220 END IF
21230 INPUT #8,f_total
21240 INPUT #8,lines
21250 INPUT #8,n_fields
21260 DIM array$(lines,f_total),fields
      (n_fields-1),field$(n_fields-1,15)
21270 FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
21280   INPUT #8,field$(i),fields(i)
21290 NEXT i
21300 FOR i=1 TO (LEN(ptr$)+LEN(empty$))/4
21310   INPUT #8,array$(i-1)
21320 NEXT i
21330 CLOSE#8
21340 END DEFine recall

```

Module 3.1.5: Setting up a pointer

This module and the one which follows, though simple, are at the core of the method of data storage used by this program. The problem to be faced with all programs which hold large quantities of data, is how to insert new items into the file. It is perfectly possible to find the right place in an ordered file and then shift everything one place upwards to make room for the new item. The only problem with this is that it takes *time*. What we shall do in the case of this program is to take advantage of one very fast method of data manipulation available on the QL, string slicing. If we have a string of 1000 characters (OLD\$), a new character (NEW\$) can be inserted at position 500 by a simple line such as:

```
old$ = old$(1 to 499) & new$ & old$(500 to)
```

Clearly, this is going to be a much faster method, but how can it be adapted to the much larger masses of information involved in a filing program, which is far more easily dealt with by means of multi-dimensional arrays like ARRAY\$, dimensioned in Module 3.1.1. The answer commonly adopted is to use what is known as a 'pointer array'.

The effect of a pointer array is to allow data to be inserted into the main file (ARRAY\$) in no particular order, items simply being placed in the first empty space, with no need to move other items to make room. The *order* of

the data, in this case alphabetical order, is preserved by the fact that each entry has an associated pointer which records its correct position in the order. Take a look at the table given below:

ORDER OF DATA ITEMS	ORDER OF POINTERS
FFF	5
CCC	4
DDD	2
BBB	3
AAA	6
EEE	1

The data items on the left, which need to be recalled in alphabetical order, are clearly a jumble. If we turn to the value of the pointers, however, we can see that the correct place of each, in terms of alphabetical order, is safely recorded, with the first pointer indicating the position of the first item in alphabetical order (AAA), the second pointer indicating the position of the second item in alphabetical order (BBB), and so on. To read through the apparently jumbled file in perfect order, all we have to do is to read the items indicated by the pointers.

What this module is going to accomplish is to create a four-character pointer which a later module will place in the correct position within a single long string, PTR\$(PoinTeR\$). The next module will retrieve the value of a four-character pointer from a particular position within PTR\$. How the pointers will be used in detail will only become apparent during the commentary on the rest of the program.

Module 3.1.5: Lines 19000 – 19060

```
19000 REMark *****
19010 DEFine FuNction four$ (ptr)
19020 REMark *****
19030 t$=ptr
19040 t$=FILL$("0",4-LEN(t$)) & t$
19050 RETurn t$
19060 END DEFine four$
```

Testing

Type:

```
print four$(1)[ENTER]
```

and the result should be '0001'. You should be able to enter any number up to 9999 and see it transformed into a four-character string.

Module 3.1.6: Retrieving a pointer

Having given ourselves the ability to create a pointer which can be inserted into a string, we turn our attention to the problem of getting a value out of the same string. This simple module accepts an argument in the form of the variable SS and slices out a four-character pointer from PTR\$.

Module 3.1.6: Lines 18000 – 18060

```
18000 REMark *****
18010 DEFine FuNction p_val (ss)
18020 REMark *****
18030 t_ptr=ss*4
18040 t_ptr=ptr$(t_ptr+1 TO t_ptr+4)
18050 RETurn t_ptr
18060 END DEFine p_val
```

Testing

Type:

```
ptr$="000300020001"[ENTER]
print p_val(2)[ENTER]
```

The result should be '1', the value of the third four-character pointer in the string.

Module 3.1.7: A better way of searching

In this module, and the two that follow, we take a look at how a new entry is added to the main file contained in ARRAYS\$, or rather how the correct position for its pointer is found in the string PTR\$. The core of the method is contained here, however, because it is this module which allows Unifile to search rapidly through a large file of entries to find the correct place to insert a new one, or to conduct a fast search for the presence of a key entry in the file.

The method is known as 'binary searching' and it can be used to dramatically reduce the time for searching in any programs you write which hold long lists of ordered data. Consider the following example.

A file has been established containing 2000 names and the task is to insert a new name into the file, in the correct alphabetical order. If we cheat and look at the list of names, we can determine that the new name 'YOUNGER' should actually go into the file at position 1731, though the computer has no way of knowing this in advance.

One thing we could do is to set the computer examining the names one by one from the beginning. It will begin with 'ADAMS' and note that 'YOUNGER' should come after, then go on to 'ADAMSON' and so on. Eventually, after examining 1732 names, the search will hit upon a name

like 'YOUNGMAN' which must come *after* 'YOUNGER', so the correct position has been found.

This is a reliable method, but how much better if the number of comparisons made could be cut down a little. Well, in the case of our file of 2000 names, the whole process can be accomplished by just *10 comparisons*. Here's how it's done.

The computer begins the search by examining the name in position 1024 of the file, because 1024 is the greatest power of 2 (2^{10}) which will fit into the total number of entries (2000). The name at position 1024 is found to be alphabetically less than 'YOUNGER' and so the computer adds $1024/2$, or 512, or 2^9 to the original search position, arriving at 1536. Once again, the name at this position is alphabetically less than 'YOUNGER' so this time 256, or 2^8 is added to 1536, making 1792. Now something different happens because the name at position 1792 is *later* in the alphabetical order than 'YOUNGER' so instead of adding 128, or 2^7 , it is *subtracted* from the search position, giving 1664.

The search goes on, adding or subtracting decreasing powers of two to build a search pattern that looks like this:

COMPARISON NO.	POSITION	ACTION
1	1024	+ 512
2	1536	+ 256
3	1792	- 128
4	1664	+ 64
5	1728	+ 32
6	1760	- 16
7	1744	- 8
8	1736	- 4
9	1732	- 2
10	1730	+ 1

Try it yourself for different numbers of entries and different target positions in the order — you will find that it always works.

Module 3.1.7: Lines 13000 – 13160

```

13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure binary_search (t1$)
13020 REMark *****
13030 po=INT (LN (LEN(ptr$) / 4) / LN(2))
13040 ss=2^po-1
13050 FOR i=po TO 0 STEP -1
13060   IF array$(p_val(ss)) < t1$
13070     ss=ss+2^i
13080   IF ss > LEN(ptr$) / 4 - 1 THEN ss=LEN
(ptr$) / 4 - 1
13090 END IF
13100 IF array$(p_val(ss)) > t1$

```

```

13110   ss=ss-2^i
13120   IF ss < 0 THEN ss=0
13130 END IF
13140 NEXT i
13150 IF array$(p_val(ss)) < t1$ THEN ss=ss+1
13160 END DEFine binary_search

```

Commentary

Line 13030 – 13040: These two expressions find the greatest power of 2 which will fit into the number of items in the file and then set the search pointer (SS) equal to that number. The total number of items is recorded by the length of PTR\$ divided by four, since each pointer contains four characters. The '- 1' in the second expression takes account of the fact that the array is numbered from zero, not one.

Lines 13050 – 13140: This loop conducts the search, using reducing powers of 2. The main file is contained in ARRAY\$ and the new entry in T1\$. Note that, as you would expect from previous explanations of the use of pointer arrays, the search pointer does *not* scan through the main array but through PTR\$, using the P_VAL function. If the item to be compared with the new entry is item number 500, it is the value of the pointer at position 500 which dictates which entry in ARRAY\$ is to be compared with the new entry.

Line 13150: In some cases the position arrived at will be 1 below the correct position — in this case SS is increased by 1.

Module 3.1.8: Inserting an item

This module inserts the new entry into the first available empty space in ARRAY\$, then records that position in PTR\$ at a place indicated by the variable SS.

Module 3.1.8: Lines 14000 – 14150

```

14000 REMark *****
14010 DEFine PROCedure insert (t1$)
14020 REMark *****
14030 IF empty$ <> ""
14040   place=empty$(1 TO 4)
14050   IF LEN(empty$) > 4
14060     empty$=empty$(5 TO)
14070   ELSE
14080     empty$=""
14090   END IF
14100 ELSE
14110   place=LEN(ptr$) / 4
14120 END IF

```

```

14130 ptr$=ptr$(1 TO ss*4) & four$(place) &
ptr$(ss*4+1 TO)
14140 array$(place)=t1$
14150 END DEFine insert

```

Commentary

Lines 14030 – 14100: In order to explain what is going on here, I'm afraid we have to jump ahead of ourselves a little to consider how items are going to be deleted from the file.

We have already said that one of the main advantages of using a pointer string is that we do not have to shift all the data when a new item is being entered — all that has to be moved is the pointers to the data, while the data itself can simply be placed in the first empty space. But where is the first empty space? To begin with, the answer to that question will be simple. As each new item is entered, it can simply be placed at the end of the file. If three items have already been entered into positions 0 to 2, the fourth item is put into position 3. That does not, however, solve the problem of deletions from the file. When an item is deleted, it will leave a hole in the array and, eventually, as the program is used, the whole of the array will consist of such holes, with no space left at the end for new items. Clearly, the holes have to be filled.

We could retreat to the cruder method of shifting everything down to cover the hole — a straightforward method used by other programs in the book — but that seems to defeat the object of using a pointer array, especially since all the pointers for the moved data would have to be changed to reflect the move.

Much simpler, and much quicker, is to work out a method which allows the positions of holes to be recorded and to use them for new items of data, since we already know that it does not matter in the least where a new item is placed, provided that its pointer is in the right place. This recording of holes is the job of `EMPTY$`, which is created by the deletion module you will enter later. `EMPTY$` is the same in structure as `PTR$`, consisting of four-character pointers, but this time the positions recorded are those of empty slots in the array.

With this explanation under your belt, you can see that these lines are quite simple. If there is an empty slot in the main part of the array (indicated by there being a pointer in `EMPTY$`) then the address of the slot is obtained and that is where the new item is placed, the address being sliced out of `EMPTY$`. If `EMPTY$` contains no record of holes in the array, then the new item is simply placed above the existing data.

Line 14130: We have already obtained the correct position of the new item in terms of alphabetical order and it is contained in the variable `SS`. A new pointer is added to `PTR$` at position `SS`, its contents being the address in `ARRAY$` of the new data item.

Module 3.1.9: Making entries to the file

Having entered the modules which do the real work, we can now proceed to the one the user will have contact with when placing material into the filing system. The function of this module is to prompt the user to input the correct number of items, in the correct order, for each entry, to combine those items into a single string which will fit into one line of `ARRAY$` and then to call up the two previous modules to insert the entry into the main file.

Module 3.1.9: Lines 12000 – 12300

```

12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure n_items
12020 REMark *****
12030 REPEAT loop
12040   REPEAT confirm
12050     t1$=""
12060     CLS
12070     AT 1,14 : PRINT "NEW ITEMS"
12080     PRINT"\Input item or 'zzz' to
quit."
FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
  CLS#0
  PRINT #0,field$(i);": "
  PRINT #0,\FILL$("=",fields(i))
  AT #0,1,0
  INPUT #0,new_temp$(i)
  IF new_temp$(i)='zzz' OR new_temp$(i)='ZZZ' THEN RETURN
  new_temp$(i)=new_temp$(i) & FILL$(CHR$(200),38)
  CLS #0
  PRINT field$(i);": ";
  PAPER 6 : INK 0
  PRINT new_temp$(i,1 TO fields(i))
  PAPER 5 : INK 1
  t1$=t1$ & new_temp$(i,1 TO fields(i))
NEXT i
INPUT "\ARE THESE CORRECT (Y/N): ";q$
IF q$="y" OR q$="Y" THEN EXIT confirm
END REPEAT confirm
binary_search (t1$)
insert (t1$)
END REPEAT loop
12300 END DEFine n_items

```

Commentary

Lines 12090 – 12230: These are the lines which request the input of the individual items for the new entry. The name for each item is taken from the array `FIELDS`, which was set up in the initialisation module. Each item

is input into the array NEW__TEMP\$, and padded out with character code 200 to a standard length of 38. As an aid to the user, the inputs are done at the bottom of the screen and the maximum length of the individual field to be entered is indicated by a line of '=' signs underneath what is to be input. Note that, as in the initialisation module, I am not entirely happy about the use of CHR\$(200) for the purposes of padding. The problem once again is that we need to add something to the end of the string which will not make a nonsense of its position in an alphabetically-arranged file. When I started to write the program, each new entry was padded to a standard length with spaces but this created the ludicrous situation that an entry of 'A' as the first field of a record, was placed *after* an entry of 'AZ', since the space after the 'A' was assessed as being greater than the letter 'Z'. If, by the time you read this, your QL is capable of recognising that a space is alphabetically less than a letter or digit, CHR\$(200) can and should be replaced by a space.

The last line of the loop accumulates the individual fields into a single string, T1\$, which, as we have already seen, is the string used for the binary search. Each field is chopped to precisely the right length, as recorded by the array FIELDS, which was set up in the initialisation module.

Testing

You are now in a position to test the last three modules that you have entered. Run the program and set up a file with two fields per record, called 'ONE' and 'TWO', each three characters long. When you have finished initialising the program and you get to the main menu, specify option 1. You will now be faced with the display created by the current module and asked to input item 'ONE'. Enter 'AA1'. The prompt will repeat for 'TWO' and you should enter 'AA2'. Repeat the process for 'DD1', 'DD2', 'CC1', 'CC2', 'BB1', 'BB2' to successive prompts. Now enter 'ZZZ' and you will return to the main menu. Select option 4 to stop the program. Now enter:

```
for i=0 to 3 : print array$(p_val(i)):next i[ENTER]
```

and you should see:

```
AA1AA2
BB1BB2
CC1CC2
DD1DD2
```

If all has worked correctly, you might like to start the program again with GOTO 11000 and use menu option 3 to store the data you have input on microdrive. This will make subsequent tests less onerous if the data should become corrupted in some way.

Module 3.1.10: Searching for items in the file

We can now proceed to the module which makes the program *useful* by allowing the data which has been stored to be retrieved. The current module will allow entries to be retrieved by one of four methods:

- 1) One by one in order from the current position.
- 2) By jumping forwards or backwards a specified number of items.
- 3) By entering a key item — the first item in the entry — for a fast search.
- 4) By searching for any occurrence of a combination of characters, wherever it is within an entry.

Module 3.1.10: Lines 15000 – 15660

```
15000 REMark *****
15010 DEFine PROCedure user_search
15020 REMark *****
15030 s1=1
15040 CLS
15050 IF LEN(ptr$)=8
15060 PRINT\\ "No data yet!"
15070 t$=INKEY$(-1)
15080 RETURN
15090 END IF
15100 PRINT\\ "Commands available:"
15110 PRINT\\ " > Input item for normal search"
15120 PRINT " > '*' first for initial search"
15130 PRINT " > Return for first item on file"
15140 PRINT\\ "*****"
15150 INPUT "Search command: ";target$
15160 IF CODE(target$)=42
15170 target$=target$(2 TO)
15180 binary_search (target$)
15190 s1=ss
15200 target$=""
15210 END IF
15220 REPEAT main_search
15230 IF target$<>" "
15240 found=0
15250 FOR i=s1 TO LEN(ptr$)/4-1
15260 found=target$ INSTR array$(p_val(i))
15270 IF found<>0
15280 s1=i
15290 EXIT i
15300 END IF
15310 NEXT i
15320 RETURN
15330 END FOR i
15340 END IF
15350 REPEAT print_loop
15360 IF s1>LEN(ptr$)/4-2 THEN s1=LEN
(ptr$)/4-2
15370 IF s1<1 THEN s1=1
```

```

15380      CLS
15390      PRINT "Entry No: ";s1\
15400      start=1
15410      FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
15420          PRINT field$(i);
15430          PAPER 6 : INK 0
15440          PRINT array$(p_val(s1),start TO
              start+fields(i)-1)
15450          PAPER 5 : INK 1
15460          start=start+fields(i)
15470      NEXT i
15480      PRINT#0," > 'ENTER' = next      'AAA'
              = amend"
15490      PRINT#0," > 'CCC' = continue  '#nn'
              = move"
15500      PRINT#0," > 'ZZZ' = quit"
15510      INPUT#0,"Which do you require: ";q$
15520      CLS#0
15530      IF q$="" THEN q$="#1"
15540      IF q$="zzz" OR q$="ZZZ" THEN RETURN
15550      IF q$="ccc" OR q$="CCC"
15560          s1=s1+1
15570      EXIT print_loop
15580      END IF
15590      IF q$="aaa" OR q$="AAA"
15600          amend
15610          q$="#0"
15620      END IF
15630      IF q$(1)="#" THEN s1=s1+q$(2 TO)
15640      END REPEAT print_loop
15650      END REPEAT main_search
15660      END DEFINE user_search

```

Commentary

Line 15030: S1 is the pointer to the current entry, and starts at 1 every time a search is begun. In normal circumstances it would start at 0, but the first record in the main file is a dummy entry.

Lines 15050 – 15090: An error message is generated if no items have yet been placed into the file.

Lines 15100 – 15130: This is the start-up menu for the search module. On each search you will see it only once, when you begin. Using this menu, the type of search to be made is specified — if you wish to change the search type you will need to quit the current search and start again with this menu. The term 'NORMAL SEARCH' indicates a search for a given combination of characters — the first record returned will be the first one in the file which contains those characters, in any position. 'INITIAL SEARCH' refers to a search for a record which *begins with* the combination of characters specified by the user. Thus, inputting '*SMI' would find any record beginning with the letters SMI, though not always the first one. If the string

specified is not present at the beginning of any record, the record returned will be the one occupying the place in which it would be inserted if input as a new entry.

On a normal search, if the specified string is not found in any of the records in the file, program execution will return to the main program menu.

Lines 15160 – 15210: This line does all the work necessary for an 'initial search', by stripping off the leading asterisk and simply calling up the binary search module to find the correct position.

Lines 15220 – 15650: The main loop which will repeat a normal search if the user so requests at a later menu. Note that the initial search routine does not fall in this loop since there is no point in repeating an initial search — the result will always be the same record.

Lines 15230 – 15340: By this point in the execution of the module, any input must be a string to be searched for using the normal search. This is done quite simply by scanning records using INSTR. If an item is found, the variable FOUND is set to its position within the record, the position is recorded in S1 and EXIT takes program execution out of the loop. If the end of the loop is reached with FOUND still equal to zero, the search is terminated and the program returns to the main menu.

Lines 15350 – 15640: This loop will continue the secondary form of the search, where the user can continue a normal search or page through the items in the file, until the user specifies that the search is to be terminated.

Lines 15360 – 15370: Within the loop the user has the option to move around the file by number — these lines check on subsequent passes through the loop that the pointer has not been moved outside the valid range for the current number of records.

Lines 15410 – 15470: These lines print out the record whose position (in the pointer array) is indicated by the search pointer S1.

Lines 15480 – 15510: The secondary menu which appears once a record is displayed. The user has the option to move on to the next entry, to call up the AMEND function (not yet entered), to search further for the previously specified string, to move through the file a specified number of records, or to return to the main program menu.

Line 15530: The '#' symbol will be used as an indication that the user wishes to move a specific number of places forwards or backwards through the file. If ENTER is pressed on its own, Q\$ is set equal to '#1', which later lines will use to move the search pointer on to the next record.

Lines 15550 – 15620: Entering 'CCC' results in the continuation of a normal search for the current TARGET\$.

Lines 15590–15620: The AMEND function, which has not yet been entered. Note that deletions are made in the AMEND mode, and, if this results in there being nothing left in the main array but the two dummy records, the search module is terminated.

Line 15630: Inputting a number preceded by the '#' sign allows the user to move forwards or backwards through the file by altering the search pointer S1.

Testing

If you have previously saved the series of four entries made in previous tests, run the program and reload the entries. Specify option 2 on the main menu and then, when the SEARCH menu appears, page through the records by pressing RETURN. Each record should be displayed on two lines, with the appropriate item name, eg:

ONE: AA1
TWO: AA2

When you reach the fourth record you should find that you can go no further using RETURN. Now enter '# -1' and you should move back to record 3. Continue to move back — you should find that you cannot move off the beginning of the file either.

Enter 'ZZZ' to return to the main menu and specify option 2 again. This time, respond to the initial SEARCH menu with 'CC'. Record 3 should be displayed — the only one to contain the characters 'CC'. You are now on the second SEARCH menu, so enter 'CCC' to continue the search. You should find yourself back at the main menu since there are no more records which contain the specified characters.

Once again, choose option 2, and this time enter '2' as your search target. Entry 1 should appear, since it contains the character '2'. Enter 'CCC' to continue the search and entry 2 should be printed — it also contains the character 2. Continue to enter 'CCC' until all record entries have been displayed and the search fails, returning you to the main menu.

Finally, choose option 2 from the main menu and enter '*B' as your search target. Entry 2 should be displayed — the only record to begin with 'B'. Enter 'ZZZ' to return to the main menu and terminate the program.

You have now tested all the search functions.

Module 3.1.11: Deleting entries

The final touches to the program are added by the following two modules, which allow entries to be changed or deleted. The deletion module is added first, since it is used whenever an entry is changed. The overall method involved in deletion has already been described in the commentary on the

insertion module for this program. The function of the module is threefold, to clear an individual record, to store the address of the resulting hole in EMPTY\$, and to remove the appropriate pointer from PTR\$.

Module 3.1.11: Lines 17000–17060

```
17000 REMark *****
17010 DEFine PROCedure remove
17020 REMark *****
17030 array$(p_val(s1))=""
17040 empty$=empty$ & four$(p_val(s1))
17050 ptr$=ptr$(1 TO s1*4) & ptr$((s1+1)*4+1 TO)
17060 END DEFine remove
```

Commentary

Lines 17040–17050: Deletion is simply accomplished by slicing the relevant pointer out of PTR\$ and recording a hole in EMPTY\$.

Testing

Run the program and reload the four items from microdrive. Specify option 4 to stop the program. Now enter:

s1=1[ENTER]
remove[ENTER]

When the flashing cursor returns, type:

goto 11000[ENTER]

and then call up the SEARCH option. You should find that the AA1/AA2 entry has disappeared from the file.

Module 3.1.12: Changing entries

The program would be of limited use to us if we were not able to change existing data — this module fills that gap.

Module 3.1.12: Lines 16000–16340

```
16000 REMark *****
16010 DEFine PROCedure amend
16020 REMark *****
16030 temp$=""
16040 start=1
16050 FOR i=0 TO n_fields-1
16060 CLS
16070 PRINT "Entry No: ";s1\
16080 PRINT field$(i);": ";
16090 PAPER 6 : INK 0
16100 PRINT array$(p_val(s1),start TO start
+fields(i)-1)
```

```

16110 PAPER 5 : INK 1
16120 AT 10,0
16130 PRINT " Commands available:"
16140 PRINT"\\" " 'ENTER' leaves field
unchanged"
16150 PRINT " Input item to replace
one shown"
16160 PRINT " 'DDD' deletes whole record"
16170 PRINT " 'ZZZ' leaves record
unchanged"
16180 INPUT " Which do you require: ";q$
16190 IF q$="ddd" OR q$="DDD" THEN remove
: RETURN
16200 IF q$="zzz" OR q$="ZZZ" THEN RETURN
16210 IF q$<>" "
16220 q$=q$ & FILL$(CHR$(200),fields(i))
16230 q$=q$(1 TO fields(i))
16240 ELSE
16250 temp$=temp$ & array$(p_val(s1),start
TO start+fields(i)-1)
16260 END IF
16270 start=start+fields(i)
16280 temp$=temp$ & q$
16290 NEXT i
16300 remove
16310 binary_search (temp$)
16320 insert (temp$)
16330 s1=s$
16340 END DEFine amend

```

Commentary

Lines 16050 – 16290: This loop, while it looks very similar to the loop which prints the record in the previous module, is different in that it prints only one item at a time.

Line 16190: Input of 'DDD' when any field is displayed deletes the whole record of which that field is a part — note that an individual *field* cannot simply be deleted, only replaced, since the number of items per entry is fixed.

Line 16200: Input of 'ZZZ' in response to any item returns execution to the SEARCH module. Any changes made to previous fields in the record will be ignored and the record will be unchanged.

Lines 16210 – 16230: If any input is made other than 'DDD' or 'ZZZ' then it is interpreted as being a replacement for the field displayed. The CHR\$(200) padding is added, as in the input module.

Lines 16240 – 16260: Pressing ENTER without an input copies the item displayed without changes. If only one item is to be changed, simply press ENTER for all the others.

Lines 16300 – 16330: The amended entry has been built up in TEMP\$. When the entry is complete, the original entry is deleted from the file. The reason for this is that the changes made may have altered the correct position of the entry in the ordered file. Once deleted, the entry is sent to the binary search module and re-inserted. Its place in the file is copied into the variable S1, so that the SEARCH module will know which item to display if the position has been changed.

Testing

Run the program and reload the four items of data from disk. Call up the search option and press ENTER to get entry 1 displayed. Now enter 'AAA' in response to the second SEARCH menu. You should see the first item 'AA1' displayed, together with the AMEND menu. Enter 'AA0' and, when the second item is displayed, press ENTER. You should now have returned to the SEARCH module, and the entry should be displayed as:

```

ONE: AA0
TWO: AA2

```

Try making other changes and deleting entries. If all works properly, the program is now complete.

PROGRAM 3.2: NNUMBER

Program function

Not all filing is concerned with words. One of the things which microcomputers do best is store and manipulate figures. The current program, Nnumber (short for 'Name and Number'), allows you to store the names of items, the units in which they are usually measured and an associated quantity. Now, before you say that you can't see a use for such a program, consider the average shopkeeper or even domestic cook.

The shopkeeper has a mass of items which are called stock. All of the items which make up the stock have names, they come in different units (box, bottle, bag, etc) and all have a very important quantity associated with them — their price. In order, therefore, to make a microcomputer help with stocktaking or make out an invoice, it must remember these three facts about each item. In the home, the foods we eat each have a name, they come in different units (spoonsful, pounds, pinch, etc) and if we are interested in their effect on our weight, then they all have a quantity associated with them known as 'calories'.

These are just two examples — you can think of many more for yourself — of the importance of being able to record names, units and an associated quantity for a whole variety of items.

The purpose of Nnumber is to allow you to create a 'dictionary' of items

— up to 1000 of them — together with the units in which they are measured and the values associated with those units. Based on that dictionary you will be able to construct lists of items which the program will display and total the quantity for you. Nnumber is as easy to use in adding up the calories for a day's recipes as it is in providing a total price for a collection of goods.

```

item: widgets
UNITS: 10 box @ 15.95
TOTAL: 159.5
oooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooo
item: flanges
UNITS: 22 bags @ 7.5
TOTAL: 165
oooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooo
item: gubbins
UNITS: 36 pots @ 3.75
TOTAL: 135
oooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooo
OVERALL TOTAL: 459.5

Any key to return to menu

```

Figure 3.2: Example of Nnumber in Current List Mode.

Module 3.2.1: Initialisation

A standard module, the only thing worthy of note being that the user is asked to specify the type of item the program will be dealing with. This will be a name such as 'Food item' or 'Stock item'. The phrase input will be used during the course of the program to prompt the user to input another item.

Module 3.2.1: Lines 10000–10100

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 REMark initialise
10020 REMark *****
10025 CLS
10030 DIM array$(1000,1,20),array(1000),
      current$(100,1,20),current(100)
10040 c_list=0 : it=0 : c_total=0
10070 INPUT "LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE (Y/N): ";Q$
10080 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="Y"
10085 recall
10090 ELSE
10095 INPUT "OVERALL NAME FOR ITEMS: ";NAME$
10100 END IF

```

Commentary

Line 10030: The array ARRAY\$ is used to record the item name and unit name for each of the items in the dictionary. The associated quantity for each unit is stored in the equivalent element of the array ARRAY.

CURRENT\$ and CURRENT will serve a similar purpose to ARRAY\$ and ARRAY but for the 'current list' which is extracted from the dictionary.

Line 10060: C_LIST will record the number of items in the 'current list' — the list derived from the main dictionary. It records the number of items in the main file — in this case the dictionary.

Module 3.2.2: Menu

A standard menu module.

Module 3.2.2: Lines 11000–11400

```

11000 REMark *****
11010 REMark menu
11020 REMark *****
11030 REPEAT prompt
11040 CLS
11050 AT 1,15 : PRINT "NNUMBER"
11060 PRINT "\ " COMMANDS AVAILABLE: "\
11070 PRINT,"1) Display current list"
11080 PRINT,"2) Input to current list"
11090 PRINT,"3) Start new current list"
11100 PRINT,"4) Delete from current list"
11110 PRINT,"5) Add to dictionary"
11120 PRINT,"6) Examine dictionary items"
11130 PRINT,"7) Save data to microdrive"
11140 PRINT,"8) Stop"
11150 INPUT"\ " WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";choice$
11160 choice="0" & choice$
11170 CLS
11180 IF it=0 AND (choice$="1" OR choice$="4"
      OR choice$="6" OR choice$="7")
11190 AT 10,13 : PRINT "NO DATA YET"
11200 t$=INKEY$(-1)
11210 choice$="0"
11220 END IF
11230 SELECT ON choice
11240 ON choice=1 : c_display
11250 ON choice=2 : c_input
11260 ON choice=3 : c_initialise
11270 ON choice=4 : c_delete
11280 ON choice=5 : d_input
11290 ON choice=6 : d_display
11300 ON choice=7 : store
11310 ON choice=8
11320 EXIT prompt
11330 END SELECT
11340 END REPEAT prompt
11350 CLS
11360 AT 10,11

```

```

11370 PRINT "NAME AND NUMBER"
11380 AT 12,9
11390 PRINT "PROGRAM TERMINATED"
11400 STOP

```

Modules 3.2.3 and 3.2.4: Data files

Two standard modules.

Module 3.2.3 and 3.2.4: Lines 21000 – 22260

```

21000 REMark *****
21010 DEFine PROCedure store
21020 REMark *****
21030 CLS
21040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
21050 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:;file$
21060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
21070 DELETE tfile$
21080 OPEN_NEW #8,"mdv1_" & file$
21090 PRINT #8,it
21100 PRINT #8,c_list
21110 PRINT #8,NAME$
21120 FOR i=0 TO it-1
21130   PRINT #8,array(i)
21140   FOR j=0 TO 1
21150     PRINT #8,array$(i,j)
21160   NEXT j
21170 NEXT i
21180 IF c_list>0
21190   FOR i=0 TO c_list-1
21200     PRINT #8,current(i)
21210     FOR j=0 TO 1
21220       PRINT #8,current$(i,j)
21230     NEXT j
21240   NEXT i
21250 END IF
21260 CLOSE#8
21270 END DEFine store
22000 REMark *****
22010 DEFine PROCedure recall
22020 REMark *****
22030 CLS
22040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
22050 DIR mdv1_
22060 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:;file$
22070 OPEN_IN #8,"mdv1_" & file$
22080 INPUT #8,it
22090 INPUT #8,c_list
22100 INPUT #8,NAME$
22110 FOR i=0 TO it-1
22120   INPUT #8,array(i)
22130   FOR j=0 TO 1
22140     INPUT #8,array$(i,j)

```

```

22150   NEXT j
22160 NEXT i
22170 IF c_list>0
22180   FOR i=0 TO c_list-1
22190     INPUT #8,current(i)
22200     FOR j=0 TO 1
22210       INPUT #8,current$(i,j)
22220     NEXT j
22230   NEXT i
22240 END IF
22250 CLOSE#8
22260 END DEFine recall

```

Module 3.2.5: Binary search

For a full commentary on this module, see the equivalent module in Unifile. Sorting is done on the basis of the item name in the zero column of ARRAYS. Note that pointer arrays will not be used in the case of this program, so the search takes place directly on the array, not via the value of a pointer.

Module 3.2.5: Lines 16000 – 16200

```

16000 REMark *****
16010 DEFine PROCedure binary_search
16020 REMark *****
16030 IF it=0
16040   ss=0
16050   RETURN
16060 END IF
16070 po=INT(LN(it)/LN(2))
16080 ss=2^po-1
16090 FOR i=po TO 0 STEP -1
16100   IF array$(ss,0)<t1$
16110     ss=ss+2^i
16120     IF ss>it-1 THEN ss=it-1
16130   END IF
16140   IF array$(ss,0)>t1$
16150     ss=ss-2^i
16160     IF ss<0 THEN ss=0
16170   END IF
16180 NEXT i
16190 IF array$(ss,0)<t1$ THEN ss=ss+1
16200 END DEFine binary_search

```

Module 3.2.6: Inserting items into the main dictionary

The principle of this module is the simpler moving of items up and down. Only you can decide whether it would be worth your while adapting the method to use a pointer array, as in Unifile.

Module 3.2.6: Lines 17000–17130

```

17000 REMark *****
17010 DEFine PROCedure d_insert
17020 REMark *****
17030 IF it<>0 AND it>ss
17040 FOR i=it TO ss+1 STEP -1
17050 array$(i,0)=array$(i-1,0)
17060 array$(i,1)=array$(i-1,1)
17070 array(i)=array(i-1)
17080 NEXT i
17090 END IF
17100 array$(ss,0)=t1$
17110 array$(ss,1)=t2$
17120 array(ss)=NN
17130 END DEFine d_insert

```

Module 3.2.7: Entering items for the dictionary

Considerably less complicated than the equivalent module in Unifile, this module accepts three inputs from the user: (a) the name of the item, (b) the name of the units in which it is measured and (c) the quantity associated with those units.

Module 3.2.7: Lines 15000–15270

```

15000 REMark *****
15010 DEFine PROCedure d_input
15020 REMark *****
15030 REPEAT entry
15040 CLS
15050 AT 1,6
15060 PRINT "NEW ITEMS FOR DICTIONARY"
15070 IF it>1000
15080 AT 6,12
15090 PRINT "NO MORE ROOM"
15100 t$=INKEY$(-1)
15110 RETURN
15120 END IF
15130 REPEAT confirm
15140 PRINT\NAME$;
15150 INPUT " ("ZZZ" to quit): ";t1$
15160 IF t1$="zzz" OR t1$="ZZZ" THEN RETURN
15170 INPUT\UNITS: ";t2$
15180 PRINT\QUANTITY PER ";t2$;": ";
15190 INPUT NN
15200 INPUT\ARE THESE CORRECT (Y/N):";Q$
15210 IF Q$="y" OR Q$="Y" THEN EXIT confirm
15220 END REPEAT confirm
15230 binary_search
15240 d_insert
15250 it=it+1
15260 END REPEAT entry
15270 END DEFine d_input

```

Testing

It is now possible to make a real test of what has been entered so far.

Run the program, specify that you are not loading from microdrive and give the name ITEM in response to the prompt for an overall name. At the main menu, choose option 5 'Add to Dictionary'. When the 'new items' screen comes up, input the following three entries:

```

THING1/BOX/10
THING2/BOTTLE/20
THING3/BAG/40

```

These items have no particular meaning, they are purely for test purposes.

When you have input the items, return to the main menu by entering 'ZZZ'. Now call up the data file module (option 7) to store the information. Stop the program with menu option eight and enter:

```
for i=0 to 2:print array$(i,0),array$(i,1),array(i):next i[ENTER]
```

You should see this:

THING1	BOX	10
THING2	BOTTLE	20
THING3	BAG	40

Now run the program and specify that you *do* want to load from microdrive. Give the name you supplied when storing the data. When the drive has finished, you should be able to perform the same test of the contents of the arrays, with the same result.

Module 3.2.8: The search routine

As in Unifile, this module provides the user with the opportunity to move through the file of dictionary items, to search for named items or to delete items from the file. The module is simpler than that given in Unifile since it is designed to search for whole items only, rather than combinations of characters stored anywhere in an item. In addition, the structure of a complete entry in Nnumber is far simpler than the structure of an item in the main array of Unifile.

Module 3.2.8: Lines 18000–18400

```

18000 REMark *****
18010 DEFine PROCedure d_display
18020 REMark *****
18030 ss=0
18040 REPEAT search_prompt
18050 CLS
18060 AT 1,15
18070 PRINT "SEARCH"

```

```

18080 PRINT "\" ITEM NUMBER: ";ss+1
18090 PRINT "\" :NAME$;": ";array$(ss,0)
18100 PRINT " UNIT: ";array$(ss,1)
18110 PRINT " QUANTITY PER ";array$(ss,1);
      ": ";array$(ss)
18120 PRINT"*****"
18130 PRINT" COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
18140 PRINT" >Item to be searched for"
18150 PRINT " >'#' then number to move
      pointer"
18160 PRINT " >'ENTER' for next item"
18170 PRINT " >'DDD' to delete item"
18180 PRINT " >'ZZZ' to quit"
18190 INPUT" WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: "; t1$
18200 IF t1$="" THEN t1$="#1"
18210 IF t1$="ddd" OR t1$="DDD"
      d_delete
18220 IF it=0
18230 EXIT search_prompt
18240 END IF
18250 t1$="#0"
18260 END IF
18270 IF t1$="zzz" OR t1$="ZZZ" THEN
18280 EXIT search_prompt
18290 END IF
18300 IF t1$(1)<>"#"
18310 binary_search
18320 END IF
18330 IF t1$(1)="#1"
18340 ss=ss+t1$(2 TO)
18350 IF ss>it-1 THEN ss=it-1
18360 IF ss<0 THEN ss=0
18370 END IF
18380 END REPEAT search_prompt
18390 END DEFine d_display
18400 END DEFine d_delete

```

Testing

Simply run the program, reload the three items of data from disk and then call up option 6 from the main menu. You should be able to page through the items, forwards or backwards, using a number preceded by '#', as in Unifile. You should also be able to recover an item by entering the item name — not the unit name.

Module 3.2.9: Deleting an item

The direct equivalent of the delete module in Unifile, but, once again, the method of storage employed here makes for greater simplicity.

Module 3.2.9: Lines 19000 – 19090

```

19000 REMark *****
19010 DEFine PROCedure d_delete

```

```

19020 REMark *****
19030 FOR i=ss TO it-1
19040   array$(i,0)=array$(i+1,0)
19050   array$(i,1)=array$(i+1,1)
19060   array(i)=array(i+1)
19070 NEXT i
19080 it=it-1
19090 END DEFine d_delete

```

Testing

Run the program, reload the data, call up option 6 from the main menu, and enter 'DDD' against one of the entries. You should find that it is removed from the file.

Module 3.2.10: Copying items into the current list

The purpose of Nnumber is not simply to keep a dictionary of items and their associated quantities, but to use that dictionary as the basis on which temporary lists can be constructed. The modules which follow are therefore designed to allow the user to add items to the 'current' list, to display that list, to delete single items from it or to delete the whole list in one operation. The current module allows the copying of items from the main dictionary into the current list.

Module 3.2.10: Lines 13000 – 13350

```

13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure c_input
13020 REMark *****
13030 REPEAT c_prompt
13040   CLS
13050   AT 1,4
13060   PRINT "CURRENT LIST ADDITIONS"
13070   IF c_list=101
13080     AT 10,5
13090     PRINT "CURRENT LIST NOW FULL"
13100     t$=INKEY$(-1)
13110     EXIT c_prompt
13120   END IF
13130   PRINT"NAME$;" ("ZZZ" to quit): ";
13140   INPUT t1$
13150   IF t1$="zzz" OR t1$="ZZZ"
13160     EXIT c_prompt
13170   END IF
13180   binary_search
13190   IF array$(ss,0)<>t1$
13200     PRINT"NAME$;" "t1$;" unknown."
      "Please check."
13210     t$=INKEY$(-1)
13220     EXIT c_prompt
13230   END IF

```

```

13240 PRINT\ "UNITS: ";array$(ss,1)
13250 PRINT\ "NUMBER OF ";array$(ss,1);
      " UNITS: ";
13260 INPUT qu
13270 INPUT\ "Are these correct (Y/N): ";Q$
13280 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="Y"
13290   current$(c_list,0)=array$(ss,0)
13300   current$(c_list,1)=qu & " " & array$(
      ss,1)
13310   current(c_list)=qu*array$(ss)
13320   c_list=c_list+1
13330 END IF
13340 END REPEAT c_prompt
13350 END DEFINE c_input

```

Commentary

Lines 13180 – 13230: These lines perform a check to see if the item input by the user, which is to be placed into the current list, is present in the main dictionary. This is done by calling up the binary search module to obtain the position at which the item would be inserted into the dictionary. The actual contents of the dictionary at this point are then compared with what the user has input. If the item input by the user is in the dictionary then the two items will be the same, otherwise an error message is printed and the module terminates.

Lines 13240 – 13260: Having found the item in the dictionary, the module prints out the units in which it is normally measured and asks how many of those units are to be included.

Lines 13270 – 13330: The user is requested to confirm the accuracy of the entry before it is added to the current list, contained in the variables CURRENT\$ and CURRENT. Note that the quantity stored in CURRENT is not the quantity per unit taken from the dictionary, but the *total* quantity for the number of units specified by the user.

Testing

Run the program and reload the data from disk. Call up option 2 on the main menu. Enter the following items and numbers of units:

```

THING1,1
THING2,2
THING3,3

```

Now try to get the module to accept 'THING4', which is not present in the dictionary. You should receive an error message asking you to check the item name. Press any key and you will return to the main menu. Before you do anything else, call up option 7 — this will store the current list you have just created, along with the main dictionary. Finally choose option 8 to stop the program.

Now enter the following line in direct mode:

```
for i=0 to 2:print current$(i,0),current$(i,1),current(i): next i[ENTER]
```

You should see this:

```

THING1      1 BOX      10
THING2      2 BOTTLE   40
THING3      3 BAG      120

```

Module 3.2.11: Displaying the current list

The sole purpose of this module is to print the entries which make up the current list, one by one on the screen. After each entry, the user is required to press a key before the next is displayed. This is because the list will normally be longer than the screen itself and the user will not want the list to scroll up off the screen faster than it can be read. At the end of the list, the total of the associated quantities for the contents of the current list is given.

Module 3.2.11: Lines 14000 – 14180

```

14000 REMARK *****
14010 DEFINE PROCEDURE c_display
14020 REMARK *****
14030 IF c_list>0
14040   CLS
14050   c_total=0
14060   FOR i=0 TO c_list-1
14070     PRINT NAME$;": ";current$(i,0)
14080     PRINT "UNITS: ";current$(i,1); " @ ";
      current(i)/current$(i,1)
14090     PRINT "TOTAL: ";current(i)
14100     PRINT "oooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooooo
      oooooooo"
14110     t$=INKEY$(-1)
14120     c_total=c_total+current(i)
14130   NEXT i
14140   PRINT "OVERALL TOTAL: ";c_total
14150   PRINT\ "Any key to return to menu"
14160   t$=INKEY$(-1)
14170 END IF
14180 END DEFINE c_display

```

Module 3.2.12: Deleting items from the current list

This is a simplified version of the kind of search module used for the main dictionary.

Module 3.2.12: Lines 20000 – 20370

```

20000 REMARK *****
20010 DEFINE PROCEDURE c_delete

```

```

20020 REMark *****
20030 count=0
20040 REPEAT c_prompt
20050 IF c_list=0 THEN EXIT c_prompt
20060 CLS
20070 AT 1,8
20080 PRINT "CURRENT LIST DELETION"
20090 PRINT"ITEM NUMBER ";count+1;" OF ";
c_list
20100 PRINTcurrent$(count,0)
20110 PRINTcurrent$(count,1); " @ ";current
(count)/current$(count,1)
20120 PRINT"COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
20130 PRINT" >'DDD' = delete"
20140 PRINT " >'ENTER' = next item"
20150 PRINT " >'ZZZ' = quit"
20160 PRINT " >'#' + number to move pointer"
20170 INPUT"WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Q$
20180 IF Q$="zzz" OR Q$="ZZZ"
20190 EXIT c_prompt
20200 END IF
20210 IF Q$="" THEN Q$="#1"
20220 IF Q$(1)="#"
20230 count=count+ Q$(2 TO)
20240 END IF
20250 IF Q$="ddd" OR Q$="DDD"
20260 FOR i=count TO c_list-1
20270 current$(i,0)=current$(i+1,0)
20280 current$(i,1)=current$(i+1,1)
20290 current(i)=current(i+1)
20300 NEXT i
20310 c_list=c_list-1
20320 IF c_list=0 THEN EXIT c_prompt
20330 END IF
20340 IF count>c_list-1 THEN count=c_list-1
20350 IF count<0 THEN count=0
20360 END REPEAT c_prompt
20370 END DEFine c_delete

```

Testing

Run the program and reload the data file containing the current list. Call up option 4, 'Delete from Current List', from the main menu. You should now be able to page through the three items in the current list and delete one — the fact that it has been deleted may be checked by displaying the current list.

Module 3.2.13: Initialising the current list

For many applications, the need will be to construct a current list, obtain the total involved, and then quickly move on to a fresh list. This simple module wipes out the contents of the current list in one operation.

Module 3.2.13: Lines 12000 – 12060

```

12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure c_initialise
12020 REMark *****
12030 DIM current$ (100,1,20)
12040 DIM current (100)
12050 c_list=0
12060 END DEFine c_initialise

```

Testing

Run the program, reload the datafile which includes the current list and specify option 3, 'Start Fresh List', from the main menu. The main menu should be almost instantly re-printed. Now try calling option 1 from the main menu. Once again, all that happens is that the main menu reprints itself — the display module has been called but since there is nothing to be displayed, execution immediately returns.

If this test is completed satisfactorily, the program is complete and ready for use.

PROGRAM 3.3: MULTIQ

Program function

In the final program in this chapter, we turn to the worthy subject of education for a little bit of fun. I'm not entirely sure how much you can learn about your chosen topic using this program, but it is fun to use, and makes answering questions addictive. Not only that, the program is a star in its own right, for an earlier version of MultiQ on the Sinclair Spectrum was the first program (at least according to the press hand-out) to set a listeners' quiz on radio in Britain.

MultiQ is, as the name suggests, a multi-purpose program that can at one moment be a language tutor and the next be quizzing you on abstruse points of 19th century history. It does all this by creating random answer tests of the type increasingly used in public examinations, setting a question and providing five possible answers, only one of which is correct. A running score is kept, providing an assessment of the user's knowledge on the current topic. Of course, the main work is on the part of the programmer, since not only does the program itself have to be entered, there is also the small matter of entering a large enough body of questions to ensure that the tests are meaningful.

Module 3.3.1: Initialisation

As with all the multi-purpose programs in this chapter, this module includes provision for describing the type of file to be handled in the current session.

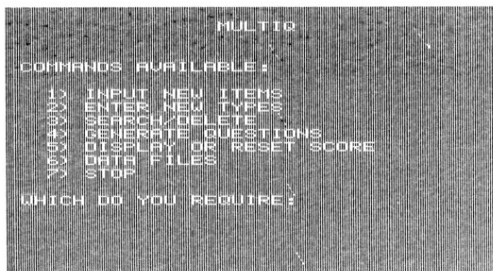


Figure 3.3: MultiQ's Command Menu.

Module 3.3.1: Lines 10000 – 10240

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 REMark initialise
10020 REMark *****
10030 PAPER 3: INK 0
10040 DIM name$(1,20),qu(4),array$(499,1,20),
      q_type$(9,20),n_type$(1,9)
10050 right=0 : total=0 : IT=0
10060 CLS : CLS#0
10070 INPUT"LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE (Y/N): ";Q$
10080 IF Q$="y" OR Q$="Y"
10090   recall
10100 ELSE
10110   REPEAT check
10120     CLS
10130     AT 1,12 : PRINT "TEST STRUCTURE"
10140     INPUT"NAME FOR ANSWER: ";T1$
10150     INPUT"NAME FOR QUESTION: ";T2$
10160     INPUT"Are these correct (y/n): ";Q$
10170     IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="y" THEN EXIT check
10180   END REPEAT check
10190   q_type$(0)="No type"
10200   n_types=1
10210   name$(0)=T1$
10220   name$(1)=T2$
10230   types
10240 END IF

```

Commentary

Line 10040: The array NAME\$ will be used to record the general names given by the user to questions and answers, QU will be used in the setting of random tests, ARRAY\$ will hold the main file of questions and answers,

Q__TYPES will hold the names of types which may be allocated to questions and answers and N__TYPE will store the number of each type in the main file.

Lines 10110 – 10180: MultiQ, as we have already noted, sets tests, ie it asks questions and displays possible answers. These lines enable the user to give a general title to questions and answers. If the program were to be used for the purposes of learning French, for instance, you might call the question 'ENGLISH WORD' and the answer 'EQUIVALENT FRENCH WORD'.

Module 3.3.2: The menu

A standard menu module.

Module 3.3.2: Lines 11000 – 11330

```

11000 REMark *****
11010 REMark menu
11020 REMark *****
11030 REPEAT display
11040   PAPER 3 : INK 0
11050   CLS : CLS#0
11060   AT 1,16 : PRINT "MULTIQ"
11070   PRINT" COMMANDS AVAILABLE: "
11080   PRINT" 1) INPUT NEW ITEMS"
11090   PRINT" 2) ENTER NEW TYPES"
11100   PRINT" 3) SEARCH/DELETE"
11110   PRINT" 4) GENERATE QUESTIONS"
11120   PRINT" 5) DISPLAY OR RESET SCORE"
11130   PRINT" 6) DATA FILES"
11140   PRINT" 7) STOP"
11150   INPUT" WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Z
11160   IF (Z>2 AND Z<7) AND IT=0
11170     PRINT "NO DATA YET"
11180     T$=INKEY(-1)
11190     Z=0
11200   END IF
11210   SELECT ON Z
11220     ON Z=1 : n_items
11230     ON Z=2 : types
11240     ON Z=3 : search
11250     ON Z=4 : questions
11260     ON Z=5 : score
11270     ON Z=6 : store
11280     ON Z=7
11290       CLS
11300       PRINT#0,"Classroom closed"
11310       STOP
11320   END SELECT
11330 END REPEAT display

```

Module 3.3.3: Setting question types

In the course of entering later modules you will discover that MultiQ makes provision for two different levels of difficulty in the tests that it sets. It does this on the basis of question types. Turning again to the example of using the program as a French language tutor, it is clearly possible to divide up the kinds of words being displayed into different grammatical groups, like verbs, nouns, adjectives and so on. If an English word is displayed which is a verb, and of the five possible French answers only one is a verb, the test is a great deal easier than if all five of the possible answers were verbs. The purpose of the current module is to allow the user to define up to 10 types into which questions or answers will fall, with the facility to tag a type on to a question as it is entered. When MultiQ later comes to set a test, it will ask whether the user wishes possible answers to questions to be drawn only from the same type as the correct answer or from the whole stock of answers.

Module 3.3.3: Lines 12000 – 12210

```

12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure types
12020 REMark *****
12030 REPEat loop
12040   CLS
12050   AT 1,16 : PRINT "TYPES"
12060   PRINT"\n Types so far:"\n
12070   FOR i=0 TO n_types-1
12080     PRINT "    ";i+1;") ";q_type$(i)
12090   NEXT i
12100   IF n_types=10
12110     PRINT"\nNO ROOM FOR MORE TYPES."
12120     T$=INKEY$(-1)
12130     RETURN
12140   END IF
12150   PRINT"\nINPUT 'ZZZ' TO QUIT OR:-"
12160   INPUT"\nINPUT NEW TYPE: ";Q$
12170   IF Q$="zzz" THEN RETURN
12180   q_type$(n_types)=Q$
12190   n_types=n_types+1
12200 END REPEat loop
12210 END DEFine types

```

Testing

You should now be in a position to run the program and enter up to 10 question types. You can confirm that the types have been accepted by stopping the program and typing:

```
for i = 0 to 9:print q_type$(i):next i[ENTER]
```

Module 3.3.4: Binary search

A standard search module, working alphabetically on the basis of the answers to questions. Note that, as you will discover when you enter the new items module in a moment, each answer is preceded by a single character (0–9) to indicate which type it is. The file will therefore be sorted first of all on the basis of types and, within types, on the basis of the alphabetical order of answers.

Module 3.3.4: Lines 14000 – 14200

```

14000 REMark *****
14010 DEFine PROCedure b_search
14020 REMark *****
14030   IF IT=0
14040     ss=0
14050     RETURN
14060   END IF
14070   po=INT (LN(IT)/LN(2))
14080   ss=2^po-1
14090   FOR i=po TO 0 STEP -1
14100     IF array$(ss,0)<T1$
14110       ss=ss+2^i
14120     IF ss>IT-1 THEN ss=IT-1
14130   END IF
14140   IF array$(ss,0)>T1$
14150     ss=ss-2^i
14160   IF ss<0 THEN ss=0
14170   END IF
14180   NEXT i
14190   IF array$(ss,0)<T1$ THEN ss=ss+1
14200 END DEFine binary_search

```

Module 3.3.5: Inserting an item

A standard insert module.

Module 3.3.5: Lines 15000 – 15130

```

15000 REMark *****
15010 DEFine PROCedure insert
15020 REMark *****
15030   IF IT<>0 AND IT>ss
15040     FOR i=IT TO ss+1 STEP -1
15050       array$(i,0)=array$(i-1,0)
15060       array$(i,1)=array$(i-1,1)
15070     NEXT i
15080   END IF
15090   array$(ss,0)=T1$
15100   array$(ss,1)=T2$
15110   IT=IT+1
15120   update
15130 END DEFine insert

```


Module 3.3.6: Keeping track of types

We have already entered the module which allows types to be recorded but we also need to give the program the ability to record how many of each type there are in the file and where each group of types starts. The record of how many of each type there are is dealt with by the input module, which simply adds 1 to the relevant element in the array N__TYPE. This module is called whenever a new entry or deletion is made. Its purpose is to record in the other side of N__TYPE the cumulative totals of types from 0–9. Eventually the answers will be arranged in type order within the main file, so knowing the total of items which fall under types 0 to 2, for instance, tells us where the items under group 3 start.

Module 3.3.6: Lines 16000–16080

```
16000 REMark *****
16010 DEFine PROCedure update
16020 REMark *****
16030 su=0
16040 FOR i=0 TO 9
16050   n_type(1,i)=su
16060   su=su+n_type(0,i)
16070 NEXT i
16080 END DEFine update
```

Module 3.3.7: Entering a new item

A straightforward module which allows the user to enter a new question and answer, then attach a type to it.

Module 3.3.7: Lines 13000–13320

```
13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure n_items
13020 REMark *****
13030 REPEAT loop
13040   CLS
13050   AT 1,15 : PRINT "NEW ITEMS"
13060   IF IT=500
13070     PRINT"\NO MORE ROOM"
13080     T*=INKEY$
13090     RETURN
13100   END IF
13110   PRINT\INPUT ITEM OR 'ZZZ' TO QUIT:"\\
13120   name$(0) = "
13130   INPUT T1$
13140   IF T1$="zzz" OR T1$="ZZZ" THEN EXIT loop
13150   PRINT name$(1) : " "
13160   INPUT T2$
13170   PRINT\TYPES:
13180   FOR i=0 TO n_types-1
13190     PRINT " ";i+1;" " ;q_type$(i)
13200   NEXT i
```

```
13200 INPUT\Which is it: ";t3
13210 t3=t3-1
13220 IF t3<0 OR t3>n_types THEN t3=0
13230 PRINT "Type: ";q_type$(t3)
13240 INPUT\ "ARE THESE CORRECT (Y/N): ";Q#
13250 IF Q#="y" OR Q#="Y"
13260   n_type(0,t3)=n_type(0,t3)+1
13270   T1=t3 & T1$
13280   b_search
13290   insert
13300 END IF
13310 END REPEAT loop
13320 END DEFine n_items
```

Commentary

Line 13260: The element of the array N__TYPE representing the type specified for the current question and answer is increased by 1. It is this array, as we have seen, which is worked on by the UPDATE module in recording where each group starts in the array.

Testing

You should now be able to run the program, specify types and then call up menu option 1 to begin entering questions and answers. To verify that items are being received correctly, enter the following data:

QUESTION	ANSWER	TYPE
Q111	A111	3
Q222	A222	2
Q333	A333	1

and then quit the program. Now type:

for i=0 to 2:for j=0 to 1:print array\$(i,j):next j:next i[ENTER]

You should see:

```
0A333
Q333
1A222
Q222
2A333
Q111
```

Module 3.3.8 and 3.3.9: Storing data

Now that items of data can be entered, it is time to enter the two standard modules which will store and recall items.

Modules 3.3.8 and 3.3.9: Lines 22000 – 23220

```

22000 REMark *****
22010 DEFine PROCedure store
22020 REMark *****
22030 CLS
22040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
22050 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file#
22060 tfile#="mdv1_" & file#
22070 DELETE tfile#
22080 OPEN_NEW #8,"mdv1_" & file#
22090 PRINT#8,IT
22100 FOR i=0 TO 1
22110   PRINT#8,name$(i)
22120   FOR j=0 TO 9
22130     PRINT #8,n_type(i,j)
22140   NEXT j
22150   FOR j=0 TO IT-1
22160     PRINT#8,array$(j,i)
22170   NEXT j
22180 NEXT i
22190 FOR i=0 TO 9
22200   PRINT #8,q_type$(i)
22210 NEXT i
22220 CLOSE#8
22230 END DEFine store
23000 REMark *****
23010 DEFine PROCedure recall
23020 REMark *****
23030 CLS
23040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
23050 DIR mdv1_
23060 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file#
23070 OPEN_IN #8,"mdv1_" & file#
23080 INPUT#8,IT
23090 FOR i=0 TO 1
23100   INPUT#8,name$(i)
23110   FOR j=0 TO 9
23120     INPUT #8,n_type(i,j)
23130   NEXT j
23140   FOR j=0 TO IT-1
23150     INPUT #8,array$(j,i)
23160   NEXT j
23170 NEXT i
23180 FOR i=0 TO 9
23190   INPUT #8,q_type$(i)
23200 NEXT i
23210 CLOSE#8
23220 END DEFine recall

```

Module 3.3.10: The user search

A simple search module which allows the user to search backwards and forwards through the main file, displaying and, after the next module is entered, deleting items.

Module 3.3.10: Lines 20000 – 20360

```

20000 REMark *****
20010 DEFine PROCedure search
20020 REMark *****
20030 ss=0
20040 REPEAT search_prompt
20050 CLS
20060 AT 1,15
20070 PRINT "SEARCH"
20080 PRINT \ " ITEM NUMBER: ";ss+1
20090 PRINT " ";name$(0);": ";array$(ss,0,2
TO)
20100 PRINT " ";name$(1);": ";array$(ss,1)
20110 PRINT " Type: ";q_type$(array$(ss,0,1))
20120 PRINT\ "*****"
20130 PRINT\ " COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
20140 PRINT " >'#' then number to move
pointer"
20150 PRINT " >'ENTER' for next item"
20160 PRINT " >'DDD' to delete item"
20170 PRINT " >'ZZZ' to quit"
20180 INPUT\ " WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: "; T1#
20190 IF T1#="" THEN T1#="#1"
20200 IF T1#="ddd" OR T1#="DDD"
20210   d_delete
20220   IF IT=0
20230     EXIT search_prompt
20240   END IF
20250   T1#="#0"
20260 END IF
20270 IF T1#="zzz" OR T1#="ZZZ"
20280   EXIT search_prompt
20290 END IF
20300 IF T1#(1)="#"
20310   ss=ss+T1$(2 TO)
20320   IF ss>IT-1 THEN ss=IT-1
20330   IF ss<0 THEN ss=0
20340 END IF
20350 END REPEAT search_prompt
20360 END DEFine d_display

```

Testing

Run the program and recall the data you have stored on microdrive. Using menu item 3 you should be able to page forwards and backwards through the items.

Module 3.3.11: Deleting an item

A standard deletion module.

Module 3.3.11: Lines 21000 – 21100

```

21000 REMark *****
21010 DEFine PROCedure d_delete
21020 REMark *****
21030 n_type(0,array$(ss,0,1)-1)=n_type(0,
      array$(ss,0,1)-1)-1
21040 FOR i=ss TO IT-1
21050   array$(i,0)=array$(i+1,0)
21060   array$(i,1)=array$(i+1,1)
21070 NEXT i
21080 IT=IT-1
21090 update
21100 END DEFine d_delete

```

Testing

Follow the procedure as for the previous module but enter 'DDD' against one or other of the items. You should find that the specified item has been removed.

Module 3.3.12: Setting questions

We now turn to the modules which constitute the novelty of MultiQ by setting the multiple choice tests. The current module handles the visible part of the process, the display of the questions and possible answers and the user's choice of correct answer.

Module 3.3.12: Lines 17000 – 17450

```

17000 REMark *****
17010 DEFine PROCedure questions
17020 REMark *****
17030 CLS
17040 AT 1,15 : PRINT "QUESTIONS"
17050 PRINT\ "Do you wish answers to be drawn"
17060 PRINT "from one type only (harder) or
      from"
17070 PRINT "the whole stock (easier)?"
17080 PRINT\ " 1) one type only"
17090 PRINT " 2) all types"
17100 INPUT\ "Which: ";rq
17110 IF rq<1 OR rq>2 THEN rq=2
17120 REPEAT loop
17130   r_select
17140   CLS
17150   PRINT name$(1); " "; array$(qu(q_pos),1)
17160   PRINT\ "name$(0); " ";
17170   FOR i=0 TO 4
17180     PRINT " "; i+1; " "; array$(qu(i),0,2
      TO)
17190   NEXT i

```

```

17200 REPEAT check
17210   INPUT\ "Which is the right answer: ";ra
17220   IF ra>0 AND ra<6 THEN EXIT check
17230 END REPEAT check
17240 IF ra=1=q_pos
17250   CLS
17260   FLASH 1 : CSIZE 3,1 : FILL 1 : INK 7
      : STRIP 7
17270   CIRCLE 82,55,15,2,0
17280   INK 2
17290   AT 4,11 : PRINT "RIGHT!"
17300   T#=INKEY#(-1)
17310   FLASH 0 : CSIZE 0,0 : FILL 0 : INK 0
      : PAPER 3 : STRIP 3
17320   right=right+1
17330 ELSE
17340   PRINT\ "Sorry, that's wrong"
17350   PRINT\ "The correct answer was ";
17360   UNDER 1
17370   PRINT array$(main_q,0,2 TO)
17380   UNDER 0
17390 END IF
17400 total=total+1
17410 AT 18,0
17420 INPUT "Any more (y/n): ";Q#
17430 IF Q#<>"Y" AND Q#<>"y" THEN EXIT loop
17440 END REPEAT loop
17450 END DEFine questions

```

Commentary

Lines 17050 – 17110: We have already noted that MultiQ is capable of setting two levels of test. These lines allow the user to specify whether possible answers are to be drawn from the whole file or from the same type as the correct answer.

Lines 17170 – 17230: The question and the five possible answers, which will be selected by the next module, are displayed. The positions of the five possible answers are held in the array QU, and the position of the correct answer within QU is recorded by the variable Q_POS.

Lines 17240 – 17390: If the user's chosen answer, as represented by the variable RA, corresponds with the correct answer's position (Q_POS), then the screen flashes the enlarged word 'RIGHT' in the centre of the screen. The variable RIGHT, which records the number of right answers, is incremented by 1. If the wrong answer is given, the user is informed that the answer is wrong and told what the correct answer was.

Lines 17400: TOTAL, the variable which records the total number of questions asked, is incremented by 1.

Module 3.3.13: Selecting the random questions

Having given ourselves the ability to display the questions and answers, we turn to the considerably more complex matter of *selecting* the questions and answers. Before the detailed commentary, we shall take a general look at the method involved.

What we want is to select one question and its corresponding correct answer and then fill the array QU with five numbers, representing the positions in the main file of the five potential answers, including the correct answer. The main question and answer are first chosen randomly from the entire file and the number of the question in the main array placed in a random position within the array QU.

Having placed the main question into QU, four alternative answers have now to be found. Depending on whether the user wants the easy or harder form of the test, the four alternative answers will be selected either from the whole of the main file or from that section which contains answers whose type is the same as that of the main answer. The four answers are chosen randomly from the appropriate section of the file, with checks being made that the same answer is not included twice and that no answer is included which appears to be identical to the correct answer.

Module 3.3.13: Lines 18000 – 18320

```

18000 REMark: *****
18010 DEFine PROCedure r_select
18020 REMark: *****
18030 start=0 : finish=IT-1
18040 main_q=RND(start TO finish)
18050 c_type=array$(main_q,0,1)
18060 IF rq=1
18070 start=n_type(1,c_type)
18080 finish=start+n_type(0,c_type)-1
18090 IF finish-start<4
18100 start=0
18110 finish=IT-1
18120 END IF
18130 END IF
18140 q_pos=RND(4)
18150 qu(q_pos)=main_q
18160 FOR i=0 TO 4
18170 IF i<>q_pos
18180 REPEAT choose
18190 duplicate=0
18200 duff=RND(start TO finish)
18210 IF array$(duff,0,2 TO=array$(main_q,
0,2 TO) THEN duplicate=1
18220 IF i>0
18230 FOR j=0 TO i-1
18240 IF array$(duff,0,2 TO=array$(qu
(j),0,2 TO) THEN duplicate=1

```

```

18250 NEXT j
18260 END IF
18270 IF duplicate=0 THEN EXIT choose
18280 END REPEAT choose
18290 qu(i)=duff
18300 END IF
18310 NEXT i
18320 END DEFine r_select

```

Commentary

Line 18030: START and FINISH represent the range of the file from which random selections of questions will be made. Originally they are set so that the whole file is included.

Line 18040: The main question and answer are selected and their position stored in MAIN_Q. The type of the answer is recorded by the variable C_TYPE.

Lines 18060 – 18130: If the user has specified the harder type of test, then START and FINISH are reset so that they point to the beginning and end of the group of questions of the same type as the main question. If it turns out that there are less than five questions in that group, so that it would be impossible to choose five different answers, START and FINISH are again set to the beginning of the file. If you specify the harder form of the test and find that the program does not provide it, the probable reason is that there are no answers of the same type as the main question.

Lines 18140 – 18150: The position in the main array of the main question is placed in a random position with QU.

Lines 18160 – 18310: This loop chooses the four alternative answers from the part of the file indicated by START and FINISH, each temporarily stored in the variable DUFF. Within the loop, checks are made comparing the new answer with the correct answer, which may be anywhere in QU and the answers previously placed in QU. Note that it is not sufficient simply to check that the same answer from the main file is not duplicated. Two questions from different parts of the main file may well have identical answers. By the end of the loop, QU contains the positions of five different answers within the main file.

Testing

The only effective way to test these modules is to enter a sufficient body of data to allow tests to be generated. The best short test would be first to register two question types, entitled TYPE 1, TYPE 2...TYPE 6. Now enter a series of questions in the form Q1, Q2...Q10, with answers in the form A1,A2...A10. The type for the first five questions should be TYPE 1, with the remaining questions as TYPE 2...TYPE 6. This provides one set

of questions capable of generating the harder form of the tests, and five others with only one question each.

Call up the random question generator and specify the harder form of the test. You should find that you can continue to answer questions and to be correctly informed as to whether your answers are right or wrong. When a question from the first five is chosen, the five answers should be in the range 1–5. When other main questions are chosen, you should be able to see that the answers are drawn from the whole of the file of 10 questions.

Module 3.3.14: Calculating the score

The final touch we shall give the program is to enable it to calculate a meaningful score for the tests. This is not quite as easy as it seems, since it is not just a matter of taking the number of right answers as a percentage of the total. If the user simply specifies the first answer for each test, on average that will be the right answer once in every five questions. A straight score of 20% may well indicate that the user has absolutely no clue as to the correct answer. The solution adopted is to subtract one-fifth of the total questions (the number that could be expected by sheer chance) from the right answers and to express that figure as a percentage of four-fifths of the total number of questions.

Module 3.3.14: Lines 19000–19180

```

19000 REMark *****
19010 DEFine PROCedure score
19020 REMark *****
19030   CLS
19040   AT 1,15 : PRINT "SCORE"
19050   IF total=0
19060     PRINT"\n NO SCORE YET"
19070     T#=INKEY#(-1)
19080     RETURN
19090   END IF
19100   PRINT "\nTOTAL ANSWERS: ";total
19110   PRINT"\nCORRECT ANSWERS: ";right
19120   PRINT"\nSCORE: ";INT(((right-total/5)/
    (total*.8))*100);"%
19130   INPUT"\nDo you wish to reset score
    (y/n):";Q#
19140   IF Q#="y" OR Q#="Y"
19150     total=0
19160     right=0
19170   END IF
19180 END DEFine score

```

Testing

Run the test for the previous module again. When you have answered a few

questions, go back to the main menu and call up the score module. You should find that the score you are given makes rough sense, even though it will not be easy to relate it exactly to the number of right answers you have given. You should also be given the option to zero the score and start a new test from scratch.

If performance on this test is satisfactory, the program is ready for use.

CHAPTER 4

Money Matters

In this final chapter we turn our attention to one important aspect that we have so far overlooked, the QL and money. It is a subject which cannot realistically be ignored because microcomputers deal so superbly with financial matters. The sums involved are seldom vast — or if they are then it is unlikely that they are being dealt with on an inexpensive micro — and the calculations involved are usually simple — a matter of addition and subtraction as money comes in and goes out.

The real advantage of the microcomputer, however, is not simply that it can deal with money, for so can the human brain: the microcomputer can store information, retrieve it quickly and then present it in such a way that it can be immediately understood.

The three programs in this chapter are:

BANKER: Allows a clear record of all payments into and out of a bank account for a 12-month period. Optional printout of monthly accounts.

ACCOUNTANT: Produces a clear set of traditionally laid out accounts from a set of figures.

BUDGET: Stores and processes large amounts of information about family finances and produces a revealing analysis of the picture over a 12-month period. Allows 'what if' decisions about possible expenditure to be explored.

PROGRAM 4.1: BANKER

Program function

The object of this program is to allow the user to keep a clear and continuously updated record of a single bank account, the names of payments, their date and the amount, including the ability to specify not only single payments, but recurring expenses or receipts, no matter how irregular the period. The program is designed to deal with an account for the period of one calendar year and will output either to the screen or to a printer.

STATEMENT FOR FEBRUARY

BALANCE C/F: 1000.00

	ITEM	TOTAL
3	MORTGAGE	- 250.00 750.00
9	ELECTRICITY	- 57.97 692.03
12	CAR REPAIRS	- 82.56 609.47
15	RATES	- 98.45 511.02
18	GAS	- 45.12 465.90
22	GROCERIES	- 56.78 409.12
27	SINCLAIR QL	- 399.00 10.12

Figure 4.1: Monthly Statement Prepared by Banker.

Module 4.1.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module.

Module 4.1.1: Lines 1000 – 1150

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark initialise
1020 REMark *****
1030 PAPER 2 : INK 7
1040 CLS : CLS#0
1050 sum = 0 : PA=0 : space$=fill$(" ",8)
1060 c1$=fill$(" ",37)
1070 DIM payment$(499,15),p_month$(499,11),
    amount(499,1)
1080 RESTORE
1090 DIM mo$(11,9)
1100 FOR i=0 TO 11
1110 READ mo$(i)
1120 NEXT i
1130 INPUT "LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE (Y/N):";Q$
1140 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="y" THEN recall
1150 DATA "JANUARY","FEBRUARY","MARCH","APRIL",
    "MAY","JUNE","JULY","AUGUST","SEPTEMBER",
    "OCTOBER","NOVEMBER","DECEMBER"

```

Commentary

Line 1070: The array PAYMENT\$ will be used to store the names of payments. P_MONTH\$ will contain a special string, explained later, which records the months in which the particular payment is made. The numerical array AMOUNT will store the amount of each payment and the day of the month on which it is made.

Lines 1080 – 1120: This loop reads the names of the months of the year into the array MO\$.

Module 4.1.2: The program menu

A standard menu module.

Module 4.1.2: Lines 2000 – 2330

```

2000 REMark *****
2010 REMark menu
2020 REMark *****
2030 REPEAT prompt
2040 PAPER 2 : INK 7
2050 CLS
2060 AT 1,15
2070 PRINT "BANKER"
2080 PRINT" COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
2090 PRINT"1) NEW PAYMENTS"
2100 PRINT"2) EXAMINE/DELETE PAYMENTS"
2110 PRINT"3) PRINT STATEMENT"
2120 PRINT"4) SAVE FILE"
2130 PRINT"5) STOP"
2140 INPUT" WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Z
2150 IF PA=0 AND (Z=2 OR Z=3 OR Z=4)
2160 PRINT"SORRY, NO DATA YET"
2170 T$=INKEY$(-1)
2180 Z=0
2190 END IF
2200 SELECT ON Z
2210 ON Z=1 : new_entries
2220 ON Z=2 : search
2230 ON Z=3 : statement
2240 ON Z=4 : store
2250 ON Z=5 : EXIT prompt
2260 END SELECT
2270 END REPEAT prompt
2280 CLS
2290 AT 10,15
2300 PRINT "BANKER"
2310 AT 12,8
2320 PRINT "CLOSED FOR BUSINESS"
2330 STOP

```

Module 4.1.3: Entering new items

This is a more complex input module than we have been used to so far, for the simple reason that the entries themselves are more complex. For each item recorded, five facts need to be known: whether the payment is a credit or a debit (money received or money paid out), the name of the payment, the amount, the months in which the payment is due, and the day of the month on which the payment is made.

Module 4.1.3: Lines 3000 – 3660

```

3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFINE PROCEDURE new_entries
3020 REMark *****

```

```

3030 REPEAT n_prompt
3040   CLS
3050   AT 1,14
3060   PRINT "NEW ITEMS"
3070   REPEAT CREDIT
3080     PRINT\("1) CREDIT"\("2) DEBIT"
3090     INPUT\("WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";CD
3100     IF CD=1 OR CD=2 THEN EXIT CREDIT
3110   END REPEAT CREDIT
3120   CLS
3130   AT 1,14
3140   PRINT "NEW ITEMS"
3150   CD=CD-1
3160   IF CD=0
3170     PRINT\CREDIT ITEM"
3180   ELSE
3190     PRINT\DEBIT ITEM"
3200   END IF
3210   INPUT\NAME OF PAYMENT: ";tpay$
3220   INPUT\AMOUNT: ";tpay
3230   IF CD=1 THEN tpay=tpay*-1
3240   rec_m$=""
3250   FOR i=0 TO 11
3260     AT 11,0
3270     INPUT (mo$(i)&" (Y/N): ");tm$
3280     IF tm$="Y" OR tm$="y"
3290       rec_m$=rec_m$ & "1"
3300     ELSE
3310       rec_m$=rec_m$ & "0"
3320     END IF
3330     AT 11,0
3340     PRINT c1$
3350   NEXT i
3360   AT 11,0
3370   PRINT "TO BE PAYED IN: ";
3380   FOR i=1 TO 12
3390     IF rec_m$(i)="1"
3400       PRINT !mo$(i-1)!
3410     END IF
3420   NEXT i
3430   INPUT\DAY OF PAYMENT (0-31): ";day
3440   INPUT\ARE THESE CORRECT (Y/N): ";T$
3450   IF T$="y" OR T$="Y" THEN EXIT n_prompt
3460   PRINT\NOT REGISTERED"
3470   T$=INKEY$(-1)
3480 END REPEAT n_prompt
3490 count=PA
3500 REPEAT loop
3510   IF day>amount(count,1)
3520     payment$(count+1)=tpay$
3530     p_month$(count+1)=rec_m$
3540     amount(count+1,0)=tpay
3550     amount(count+1,1)=day
3560   EXIT loop

```

```

3570   END IF
3580   payment$(count+1)=payment$(count)
3590   p_month$(count+1)=p_month$(count)
3600   amount(count+1,0)=amount(count,0)
3610   amount(count+1,1)=amount(count,1)
3620   count=count+1
3630   IF count<0 THEN EXIT loop
3640 END REPEAT loop
3650   PA=PA+1
3660 END DEFINE new_entries

```

Commentary

Lines 3030 – 3480: The overall loop which allows the user to confirm or reject the information input.

Lines 3070 – 3200: The program clearly needs to know whether the item is to be paid out or received, debit or credit. This is recorded in the form of the variable CD (Credit/Debit), and an appropriate heading placed on the screen.

Line 3230: If the user has specified a debit item, ie a payment out of the account, the amount input is multiplied by minus one.

Lines 3240 – 3420: The months in which the payment is to be made are input in response to a series of prompts. For each of the 12 months, a character is added to the temporary string REC__M\$. If the payment is to be made in the corresponding month, the character added is a '1', otherwise it is a '0'. The FOR loop beginning at line 3380 prints out the names of the specified months as recorded in REC__M\$, so that the user can determine that they are the months intended.

Lines 3500 – 3640: This is the loop which inserts a new item into the main file, in order of day of payment. The technique is a very simple one. Starting with the last entry, the loop compares the day on which the new payment is made with the day of payment of the item in the main file. If the day of payment in the main file is less than the day of payment for the new item, then the new item is inserted in the space following the item in the main file. If the item in the main file has a day of payment *after* the day of payment for the new item, the loop shifts the existing item one space up the file. In this way, as it scans down the file, it carries a spare line with it until the correct location for the new item is found. Note that this technique means that the first element in the main file, element zero, is always left unused, acting as a buffer so that the loop will always know when the beginning of the data has been reached.

Testing

Run the program and call up option 1 from the menu. Enter a new item as follows:

Debit (option 2 on the prompt)

Name: TEST

Amount: 100

Months: FEBRUARY/MAY/AUGUST/NOVEMBER

Day: 15

After a pause you should return to the main menu. Stop the program by using menu option 5. Now type:

```
print payment$(1),p__month$(1),amount(1,0),amount(1,1)
```

The result should be:

```
TEST 010010010010 - 100 15
```

Module 4.1.4: Formatting a number

Before we can go on to enter the module which prints out the statement of the account, two short modules must be dealt with. The first of them will be used to translate numerical data into a standard format so that it can easily be printed in columns, with decimal points neatly aligned. In addition, we need to overcome the rather annoying limitation that (on early versions at least) the QL kicks into what is called 'scientific notation' for any value less than 0.1. Try PRINT 0.09 on your machine and you will see what I mean — what is displayed on the screen is 9E-2, or 9 multiplied by 10 to the power -2. This is a ludicrous situation for a machine aimed to some extent at the business market, since it means the QL cannot be relied on to print out pence (or cents, or centimes, or...) in a normal format. Fortunately there are ways round the problem and this module illustrates one of them.

Module 4.1.4: Lines 8000-8170

```
8000 REMark *****
8010 DEFine FuNction format$( nn,type)
8020 REMark *****
8030 LOCAL i,n
8040 n=INT (ABS (nn*100)+5E-2)
8050 n$=""
8060 FOR i=6 TO 0 STEP -1
8070   n$=n$ & INT (n/10^i)
8080   n=n-10^i*INT (n/10^i)
8090 NEXT i
8100 FOR i=1 TO 4
8110   IF n$(i)<>"0" THEN EXIT i
8120   n$(i)=" "
8130 END FOR i
8140 n$=n$(1 TO LEN(n$)-2) & "." & n$(LEN(n$)-1 TO)
8150 IF type=1 THEN RETURN n$
8160 IF type=2 THEN RETURN n$(4 TO 5)
8170 END DEFine format$
```

150

Commentary

Line 8030: Since the procedure may be called from within a loop, the loop variable I is declared as a local variable — any changes made to it will not affect its value anywhere else in the program.

Line 8040: The number being sent to the module, NN, is multiplied by 100 to remove any decimal fraction. In addition, since rounding errors were encountered when the module was first used, resulting in figures like 12.9999999999 being produced rather than 13, a tiny decimal fraction is added, and then the integer of the resultant number taken — the effect of this is that the correct whole number is always produced.

Lines 8060-8090: Using powers of 10 to divide the number successively, individual digits can be identified. Thus, if the number were 1234, dividing by 10³ would produce 1. Subtracting the thousand, which has already been analysed, 234 divided by 10² produces 2, and so on. Each digit is stored in N\$ as it is extracted. Since the loop runs from 6 to 0 in powers of 10 (1,000,000 to 1), the resulting string will be seven digits long, with leading zeros if the number being worked on is less than 1,000,000.

Lines 8100-8130: The number in N\$ is scanned to see whether it has any leading zeros. If so, they are replaced with spaces.

Line 8140: N\$ is translated back into a number with a decimal fraction by adding a decimal point before the last two characters — in effect, dividing by 100 but doing the operation on a string so that the QL cannot go into scientific notation. In addition, if the original number had no decimal fraction, it will now have '.00' tagged on to the end, ensuring a standardised format. Note, however, that the resultant string can only accurately contain a figure of up to 99,999.99 due to the limitation to seven digits — it could easily be adapted to cope with more than this but the range is sufficient for the current program.

Lines 8150-8160: The module will be used to format two types of numbers, the day of payment and actual cash values. What kind of format it will return for a given number will depend on the value sent in the form of the parameter TYPE.

Testing

To extract a number from the module, simply enter:

```
print format$(XX,type) [ENTER]
```

where XX is the number you want formatted and TYPE is either 1 or 2. If you set TYPE to 1, you should get an eight character string, including leading spaces and two characters after the decimal point. If TYPE is 2, the format will be two characters, including a leading space for values under 10.

151

Module 4.1.5: Dealing with negative numbers

One further problem, when it comes to formatting numbers, is raised by negative quantities. It is quite possible simply to place minus signs in front of them on the screen, but this does not stand out and so can lead to incorrect interpretation. A much clearer and more unambiguous method is to print the numbers, or their backgrounds, in red, and this is the solution adopted here when output is made to the screen. On the other hand, the program can also output a statement to the printer, which would not recognise such colour instructions — in this case, a simple minus sign must be used.

Module 4.1.5: Lines 7000 – 7170

```

7000 REMark *****
7010 DEFine PROCedure colour (flag)
7020 REMark *****
7030 IF hard=0
7040   IF flag>=0
7050     PAPER #5,6 : INK #5,0
7060   ELSE
7070     PAPER #5,2 : INK #5,7
7080   END IF
7090 END IF
7100 IF hard=1
7110   IF flag>=0
7120     PRINT #5," ";
7130   ELSE
7140     PRINT #5,"-";
7150   END IF
7160 END IF
7170 END DEFine colour

```

Commentary

Lines 7030 – 7090: HARD is the variable which indicates whether printer output is required (hardcopy). This extended IF will only be acted upon when output is to the screen. The number which is about to be printed is sent to this module, which accepts it under the name FLAG. If FLAG is a positive number, the paper colour is set to yellow and the ink to black. If flag is negative, the colour is white ink on red paper. Explanation of the #5 contained in the commands will be kept until the commentary on the following module.

Lines 7110 – 7160: These lines are acted upon in HARD equals 1, indicating that output is to be to the printer. In this case a space is printed in front of positive numbers and a minus sign in front of negative ones.

Testing

Type:

```

open #5,scr_[ENTER]
colour -1[ENTER]
print #5,1234[ENTER]

```

You should find that the number has been printed in white lettering on a red background, since the parameter sent to the procedure was negative. Now try 'colour 1' and you should find the number printed on a yellow background, indicating a positive number. Before moving on, type 'close #5'. The use of channel 5 will be explained shortly.

Module 4.1.6: Displaying the statement

Though there are more modules to come, the final task for the main part of the program is to take the items which have been entered using the previous module and compile them into a statement for any specified month of the year. The statement will include a calculation of the balance carried forward from previous months, and will also display in full all the payments for the month and the continuing balance created by each payment.

Module 4.1.6: Lines 6000 – 6560

```

6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFine PROCedure statement
6020 REMark *****
6030 PAPER 6 : CLS : INK 0
6040 INPUT \ " OUTPUT TO PRINTER (Y/N) ";hard#
6050 IF hard#="Y" OR hard#="y"
6060   OPEN #5,ser1
6070   hard=1
6080 ELSE
6090   OPEN #5,scr_
6100   hard=0
6110 END IF
6120 REPEAT check
6130   INPUT \ " NUMBER OF MONTH (1-12) : ";mo
6140   mo=mo-1
6150   IF mo>=0 AND mo<=11 THEN EXIT check
6160 END REPEAT check
6170 CLS
6180 PRINT#5,"STATEMENT FOR ";mo$(mo)
6190 sum=0
6200 IF mo>0
6210   FOR J=1 TO mo
6220     FOR i=1 TO PA
6230       IF p_month$(i,J)="1"
6240         sum=sum+amount(i,0)
6250       END IF
6260     NEXT i
6270   NEXT J
6280 END IF
6290 PRINT#5,\ " BALANCE C/F: ";

```

```

6300 colour sum
6310 PRINT #5,format$(sum,1)
6320 colour 1
6330 IF NOT hard THEN UNDER #5,1
6340 PRINT#5,"          ITEM
        TOTAL "\;
6350 IF NOT hard THEN UNDER#5,0
6360 IF hard THEN PRINT #5," ";
6370 FOR i= 1 TO PA
6380   IF p_month$(i,mo+1)="1"
6390     PRINT #5,format$(amount(i,1),2); " ";
6400     T$=payment$(i) & c1$
6410     PRINT #5,T$(1 TO 15); " ";
6420     colour amount(i,0)
6430     PRINT #5,format$(amount(i,0),1); " ";
6440     colour 1
6450     sum=sum+amount(i,0)
6460     colour sum
6470     PRINT#5,format$(sum,1)
6480     colour 1
6490     IF hard=0 THEN T$=INKEY$(-1)
6500   END IF
6510 NEXT i
6520 CLOSE #5
6530 AT 18,0
6540 PRINT\ "ANY KEY TO RETURN TO MENU"
6550 T$=INKEY$(-1)
6560 END DEFine statement

```

Commentary

Lines 6040 – 6110: You have already had notice that at some point a decision has to be taken as to where the output of the program is going to be sent — to the screen or to the printer. These lines accomplish the choice. Throughout this module all output is made to channel number 5. What these lines do is decide whether that channel is a line of communication to the screen or to the printer. The printer, as we have seen in earlier programs, is accessed through the SER1 port, whereas the screen, when opening a channel, is simply called SCR_. Note that, if you do not have a printer connected, you should not try to output data to SER1 as you will lock up the QL.

Line 6190: The variable SUM will be used to hold the balance in the account — both the balance carried forward and the balance after each item.

Lines 6200 – 6280: Provided that the statement is not for the first month, in which case there is no balance to be carried forward, these two loops scan the whole of the payments list once for each month which precedes the month of the statement. In this way, each payment is examined to see whether it is made in any of the preceding months, in which case the appro-

priate amount is added to the total in SUM. By the end of the two loops, SUM contains the full total of any changes in the balance since the beginning of the year. (Keeping a complete balance, including any monies which were in the account at the beginning of the year, can be easily achieved by entering the balance from the end of the previous year as a payment on 1st January.)

Lines 6300 – 63320: An example of the use of the two short modules just entered, which will deal with the print colour and formatting of SUM.

Lines 6330 – 6350: Like the colour characteristics, the UNDER characteristic means nothing to the printer and is only sent when the screen is being used.

Lines 6370 – 6510: This loop scans through the complete list of payments, while the extended IF from lines 6380 to 6500 selects only those which have a '1' in the relevant position of the string recording the months in which the payment is to be made. When a payment is to be made in the month specified for the statement, the loop prints out the day, AMOUNT(I,1), the name, PAYMENTS(I), the amount of the payment, AMOUNT(I,0), and finally the balance the payment produces, obtained by adding the amount to the previous total in SUM. Notice that each time a number is to be printed, it is sent to COLOUR and FORMAT\$ to ensure that the correct colour is set and that the number is in the correct format. When output is to the screen, a key must be pressed before each item is displayed — this is to prevent the statement scrolling quickly upwards off the screen if there are too many lines of information.

Testing

Run the program and enter some test data. You should find that you get a display something like the example given at the beginning of the program. Try the statement for different periods of the year to ensure that the module can cope with the different months.

Module 4.1.7: Saving data

A standard data storage module.

Module 4.1.7: Lines 9000 – 9180

```

9000 REMark *****
9010 DEFine PROCedure store
9020 REMark *****
9030 CLS
9040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
9050 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file$
9060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$

```

```

9070 DELETE tfile#
9080 OPEN_NEW #B,"mdv1_" & file#
9090 PRINT#B,PA
9100 FOR i=1 TO PA
9110 PRINT#B,payment$(i)
9120 PRINT#B,p_month$(i)
9130 FOR J=0 TO 1
9140 PRINT#B,amount(i,J)
9150 NEXT J
9160 NEXT i
9170 CLOSE#B
9180 END DEFine store

```

Module 4.1.8: Loading data

A standard data recall module.

Module 4.1.8: Lines 10000 – 10170

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine PROCedure recall
10020 REMark *****
10030 CLS
10040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
10050 DIR mdv1_
10060 INPUT\ " Name of data file: ";file#
10070 OPEN_IN #B,"mdv1_" & file#
10080 INPUT#B,PA
10090 FOR i=1 TO PA
10100 INPUT#B,payment$(i)
10110 INPUT#B,p_month$(i)
10120 FOR J=0 TO 1
10130 INPUT#B,amount(i,J)
10140 NEXT J
10150 NEXT i
10160 CLOSE#B
10170 END DEFine store

```

Module 4.1.9: Changing and deleting items

As in Nnumber, a simple user search module, which allows the user to scan backwards and forwards or delete an item, though the delete function will not be available until the next module has been entered.

Module 4.1.9: Lines 4000 – 4340

```

4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure search
4020 REMark *****
4030 count=1
4040 REPEAT display
4050 CLS
4060 PAPER 0

```

```

4070 BLOCK 448,90,0,0,0
4080 PRINT\ "PAYMENT: ";payment$(count)
4090 PRINT "AMOUNT: ";amount(count,0)
4100 PRINT"MONTHS: ";
4110 FOR i=1 TO 12
4120 IF p_month$(count,i)="1"
4130 PRINT 'mo$(i-1)!'
4140 END IF
4150 NEXT i
4160 PRINT\ "DAY OF PAYMENT: ";amount(count,1)
4170 PAPER 2
4180 AT 10,0
4190 PRINT " COMMANDS AVAILABLE:"
4200 PRINT\ " 'ENTER' > NEXT ENTRY"
4210 PRINT " 'DDD' > DELETE ENTRY"
4220 PRINT " '#' THEN NUMBER > MOVE"
4230 PRINT " 'ZZZ' > QUIT"
4240 INPUT\ " WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Q$
4250 IF Q$="ddd" OR Q$="DDD" THEN remove
4260 IF Q$="zzz" OR Q$="ZZZ" THEN EXIT display
4270 IF Q$=" " THEN Q$="#1"
4280 IF Q$(1)="#"
4290 count=count+Q$(2 TO)
4300 END IF
4310 IF count>PA THEN count=PA
4320 IF count<1 THEN count=1
4330 END REPEAT display
4340 END DEFine search

```

Testing

Though you cannot delete items, you should be able to page backwards and forwards through any material you have in memory.

Module 4.1.10: Deleting items

A standard delete module, collapsing the file down on to the deleted item.

Module 4.1.10: Lines 5000 – 5100

```

5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFine PROCedure remove
5020 REMark *****
5030 FOR i=count TO PA
5040 payment$(i)=payment$(i+1)
5050 p_month$(i)=p_month$(i+1)
5060 amount(i,0)=amount(i+1,0)
5070 amount(i,1)=amount(i+1,1)
5080 NEXT i
5090 PA=PA-1
5100 END DEFine remove

```

Testing

You should now be able not only to page through your material but to delete items at will. The program is now complete and ready to use.

PROGRAM 4.2: ACCOUNTANT

Program function

The second program in this final chapter is more complex than Banker. Its function is to keep two sides of a simple set of accounts, setting them out in the traditional format, with some items standing alone and others clearly divided into groups representing different types of expenditure. Separate screens are produced for the credit and debit side of the accounts, with the overall balance of the account displayed.

```

              DEBIT
HOUSE
MORTGAGE      250.00
RATES         98.45
-----
SINCLAIR QL   348.45
HOLIDAY       399.00
QL BOOKS      456.21
              29.90
TOTAL:        1233.56

CREDIT BALANCE IS      0.00
OVERALL BALANCE IS - 1233.56
PRESS ANY KEY TO QUIT

```

Figure 4.2: Account Prepared by Accountant.

Module 4.2.1: Initialisation

A standard initialisation module.

Module 4.2.1: Lines 1000–1070

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark initialise
1020 REMark *****
1030 PAPER 4 : INK 0
1040 CLS : CLS#0
1050 DIM account$(1,499,15),account(1,499),
      cand(1)
1060 INPUT"LOAD FROM MICRODRIVE (Y/N): ";0$
1070 IF 0$="Y" OR 0$="y" THEN recall

```

Commentary

Line 1050: The two sides of the accounts, credit and debit, including the

names associated with each payment, are stored in the two sides of the arrays ACCOUNT and ACCOUNT\$. Up to 500 items can be stored on both sides, although it would be quite feasible to increase the size of the arrays if more space were required.

Module 4.2.2: The main menu

A standard menu module.

Module 4.2.2: Lines 2000–2410

```

2000 REMark *****
2010 REMark menu
2020 REMark *****
2030 REPEAT menu
2040   PAPER 4 : INK 0
2050   CLS
2060   AT 1,13
2070   UNDER 1
2080   PRINT "ACCOUNTANT"
2090   UNDER 0
2100   PRINT"COMMANDS AVAILABLE: "
2110   PRINT"  1) INPUT NEW HEADINGS"
2120   PRINT"  2) CHANGE/DELETE ITEMS"
2130   PRINT"  3) PRINT ACCOUNTS"
2140   PRINT"  4) DATA FILES"
2150   PRINT"  5) STOP"
2160   INPUT"WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Z
2170   IF cand(0)=0 AND cand(1)=0 AND (Z=2 OR
      Z=3 OR Z=4)
2180     PRINT"      SORRY, NO DATA YET"
2190     Z=0
2200     T$=INKEY$(-1)
2210   END IF
2220   SELECT ON Z
2230     ON Z=1 : TYPE : heading
2240     ON Z=2 : TYPE : search
2250     ON Z=3 : TYPE : output
2260     ON Z=4 : store
2270     ON Z=5
2280       CLS
2290       AT 10,13
2300       PRINT "ACCOUNTANT"
2310       PRINT #0,"Program Terminated"
2320       STOP
2330   END SELECT
2400   END REPEAT menu
2410

```

Module 4.2.3: Credit or debit?

Unlike Banker, several parts of this program need to know whether a credit

or debit item is being specified, so the routine to request this information is included in a separate module, the item type being recorded in the variable CORD (C or D).

Module 4.2.3: Lines 3000 – 3110

```
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure TYPE
3020 REMark *****
3030 REPEAT check
3040 PRINT" 1) CREDIT" 2) DEBIT"
3050 INPUT"WHICH IS IT: ";icord
3060 IF icord=1 OR icord=2 THEN EXIT check
3070 END REPEAT check
3080 icord=icord-1
3090 icord$="CREDIT"
3100 IF icord=1 THEN icord$="DEBIT"
3110 END DEFine TYPE
```

Module 4.2.4: The type of item

This module is trivial in itself but it gives a clue as to why this program is bound to be longer than something like Banker. The purpose of the module is to allow the user to specify which of three types an item about to be input falls under. The three types are:

- 1) **A single item:** All that is required for this is the name of the item and the amount. When the eventual account is printed out, individual items will have their names printed on the lefthand side and the amount associated in the main column of figures on the right.
- 2) **A main heading:** It is this type which allows groups of items to be specified within the overall account. If you were using the program to prepare domestic accounts, for instance, you might set up 'CAR' as a main heading for a group of items including items like tyres, fuel, repairs and so on. In the eventual account, the name of the main heading will be printed on the lefthand side but there will be no amount printed against the main heading itself.
- 3) **Subheadings:** As illustrated under (2) above, each main heading can have a list of items following it, which are part of a separate group. In the accounts, the names of subheadings will be printed under their relevant main heading, inset from the left, while the amount associated with each subheading will be printed to the left of the main column of figures.

Module 4.2.4: Lines 4000 – 4200

```
4000 REMark *****
4010 DEFine PROCedure heading
4020 REMark *****
```

```
4030 REPEAT h_loop
4040 CLS
4050 AT 1,14 : PRINT "NEW ITEMS"
4060 PRINT"\\icord$
4070 PRINT"\\Is the item:"
4080 PRINT" 1) A single item"
4090 PRINT " 2) A main heading"
4100 PRINT " 3) A sub-heading"
4110 PRINT " (Input '0' to quit)"
4120 INPUT"Please specify: ";h_type
4130 SELECT ON h_type
4140 ON h_type=0 : EXIT h_loop
4150 ON h_type=1 : single
4160 ON h_type=2 : single
4170 ON h_type=3 : sub_head
4180 END SELECT
4190 END REPEAT h_loop
4200 END DEFine heading
```

Testing

Having entered all the parts of the program which do not employ any calculation, it is probably best if you run the program and quickly test the menu. If you specify that you wish to input a new item, you should be asked whether it is a credit or a debit, and then asked to specify the type — though that is as far as you can go. The only other menu function which will have any effect is option 5 to stop the program. The menu itself should stop you from accessing the functions to alter data or print the accounts, since no data has yet been entered.

Module 4.2.5: Entry of single items and main headings

Two separate modules take care of the input of subheadings on the one hand (see the next module), and single items or main headings on the other. It is important, in understanding later parts of the program, that you try to follow the way in which the items are stored and the special indicator characters which record the item type.

Module 4.2.5: Lines 5000 – 5210

```
5000 REMark *****
5010 DEFine PROCedure single
5020 REMark *****
5030 INPUT"Name of item: ";name$
5040 IF h_type=1
5050 INPUT "Amount for item: ";amount
5060 END IF
5070 INPUT "Is this correct (Y/N): ";Q$
5080 IF Q$<>"Y" AND Q$<>"N"
5090 PRINT"NOT REGISTERED"
5100 T$=INKEY$(-1)
```

```

5110      RETurn
5120  END IF
5130  IF h_type=1
5140      name$="Z" & name$
5150  ELSE
5160      name$="*" & name$
5165      amount=0
5170  END IF
5180  account$(cord,cand(cord))=name$
5190  account(cord,cand(cord))=amount
5200  cand(cord)=cand(cord)+1
5210  END DEFine single

```

Commentary

Lines 5040–5060: As mentioned in the introduction to the previous module, main headings have no money figure associated with them, so these lines accept a figure only for single items.

Line 5130–5170: There are no separate storage areas for the different types of item, apart from the credit and debit sides of the arrays. Later parts of the program will determine the item type by looking at a special indicator character attached to the beginning of the item name. This will be '%' for a single item and '*' for a main heading.

Lines 5180–5200: You have already met the variable CORD, which records whether an item is a credit or a debit. Here CORD is used to decide on which side of the arrays ACCOUNT and ACCOUNT\$ the new item is to be placed. In addition, we need to keep a record of the number of items on the credit and debit sides, since these will normally be different. This is done by the array CAND (C and D). The array was declared in the initialisation module and has only two elements, CAND(0) and CAND(1), corresponding to the credit and debit sides of the main arrays. Once again, the value of CORD is used to indicate which of the two elements of CAND is to be used. Applying this, we can see that when reference is made to:

```
ACCOUNT (CORD,CAND(CORD))
1         2         3
```

what is meant is:

- 1) An element in the numeric array ACCOUNT.
- 2) On the side indicated by the value of CORD, ie credit or debit.
- 3) The first empty element on that side, determined by what is already stored.

Testing

Run the program and call up the new entry option. Specify that you wish to enter a main heading on the credit side, then enter TEST MAIN for the item name — no value should be requested. Now specify a single item on

the credit side, with the name TEST and the value 100. Now do exactly the same thing but on the debit side of the accounts.

Stop the program from the menu and enter, in direct mode:

```
print account(0,0),account(1,0),account$(0,0),account$(1,0)[RETURN]
```

You should see:

```
0      0      *TEST MAIN      *TEST MAIN
```

Now perform the same procedure for line 1 of the arrays, eg ACCOUNT(0,1) etc. You should see:

```
100    100    %TEST      %TEST
```

Finally, print out the value of CAND(0) and CAND(1) — both should equal 2.

Module 4.2.6: Entering a subheading

The question of entering a new subheading is not quite as simple as that for a single item. For each new subheading that is entered, a check has to be made for the presence of the relevant main heading and the item placed next to its main heading rather than simply tagged on to the end of the items previously stored.

Module 4.2.6: Lines 6000–6260

```

6000 REMark *****
6010 DEFine PROCedure sub_head
6020 REMark *****
6030 REPEAT check
6040     INPUT "Main heading: ";search$
6050     search$="*" & search$
6060     FOR p1=0 TO cand(cord)-1
6070         IF account$(cord,p1)=search$ THEN
6080             EXIT p1
6090     PRINT "Heading not found."
6100     T$=INKEY$(-1)
6110     RETURN
6120 END FOR p1
6130 INPUT "Name of sub-heading: ";name$
6140 INPUT "Amount: ";amount
6150 INPUT "Are these correct (Y/N): ";Q$
6160 IF Q$="Y" OR Q$="y" THEN EXIT check
6170 END REPEAT check
6180 name$="*" & name$
6190 FOR i=cand(cord)+1 TO p1+2 STEP -1
6200     account$(cord,i)=account$(cord,i-1)

```

```

6210      account(cord,i)=account(cord,i-1)
6220  NEXT i
6230  account$(cord,p1+1)=name$
6240  account(cord,p1+1)=amount
6250  cand(cord)=cand(cord)+1
6260 END DEFine sub_head

```

Commentary

Lines 6040 – 6120: The name of the relevant main heading is requested and a check is made of the items already in the file that the heading actually exists — if not, an error message is printed and the program returns to the menu. Note the use here of both NEXT and END FOR, to provide a section of program which is only executed if the loop finishes normally. If an object is found, the EXIT command jumps to the END FOR, *not* to the NEXT.

Lines 6190 – 6250: As previously mentioned, the whole point of a subheading is that it should appear in the main accounts as part of a group printed under the relevant main heading. In order to achieve this simply, the method employed is to store it in the file next to its main heading. The position of the first item following the main heading has already been found by the FOR loop at line 6060, so all that needs to be done is to move up all the items above that point and place the new item into the array directly after its main heading — note that this means that the latest subheading is always the first item under its relevant main heading.

Testing

Input the items specified for the test of Module 4.2.5, then call up the new entry module again to place a new subheading on the credit side, named TEST SUB, with a value of 200. Do the same for the debit side.

Enter the following in direct mode:

```

for i=0 to 2:print account(0,i),account(1,i),account$(0,i), account$(1,i):
next i[RETURN]

```

You should see:

0	0	*TEST MAIN	*TEST MAIN
200	200	\$TEST SUB	\$TEST SUB
100	100	%TEST	%TEST

Print out the values of CAND(0) and CAND(1) — these should both be 3.

Module 4.2.7: Data files — store

Since the data for Accountant is fairly complex to use, it is probably wise to enter the data file module at this point to eliminate the need for constant

re-entry of data when testing. Once the module has been entered, enter and save the data specified for the test of the previous module. Both modules are completely standard.

Module 4.2.7: 11000 – 11170

```

11000 REMark *****
11010 DEFine PROCedure store
11020 REMark *****
11030 CLS
11040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
11050 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:":file$
11060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
11070 DELETE tfile$
11080 OPEN_NEW #8,"mdv1_" & file$
11090 FOR side=0 TO 1
11100   PRINT#8,cand(side)
11110   FOR i=0 TO cand(side)-1
11120     PRINT#8,account$(side,i)
11130     PRINT#8,account(side,i)
11140   NEXT i
11150 NEXT side
11160 CLOSE#8
11170 END DEFine store

```

Module 4.2.8: Data files — recall

Module 4.2.8: 12000 – 12160

```

12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure recall
12020 REMark *****
12030 CLS
12040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
12050 DIR mdv1_
12060 INPUT"\\" Name of data file:":file$
12070 OPEN_IN #8,"mdv1_" & file$
12080 FOR side=0 TO 1
12090   INPUT#8,cand(side)
12100   FOR i=0 TO cand(side)-1
12110     INPUT#8,account$(side,i)
12120     INPUT#8,account(side,i)
12130   NEXT i
12140 NEXT side
12150 CLOSE#8
12160 END DEFine recall

```

Module 4.2.9: Changes to items

A standard module with some added features to take account of the fact that some items do not stand alone but as part of groups of items under a common main heading.

Module 4.2.9: Lines 7000 – 7420

```

7000 REMark *****
7010 DEFine PROCedure search
7020 REMark *****
7030 count=0
7040 REPEAT display
7050   CLS
7060   PAPER 0 : INK 7
7070   BLOCK 448,70,0,0,0
7080   temp#=account$(cord,count)
7090   IF temp$(1)<>"$" THEN PRINT\\temp$(2 TO)
7100   IF temp$(1)="*" THEN hh#=temp$(2 TO)
7110   IF temp$(1)="$"
7120     PRINT\\hh#
7130     PRINT\\temp$(2 TO)
7140   END IF
7150   IF temp$(1)<>"*" THEN PRINT format$
     (account(cord,count))
7160   PAPER 4 : INK 0
7170   AT 8,1
7180   PRINT " COMMANDS AVAILABLE: "
7190   PRINT\\ " 'ENTER' > NEXT ITEM"
7200   PRINT " 'CCC' > CHANGE AMOUNT"
7210   PRINT " '#' NUMBER > MOVE POINTER"
7220   PRINT " 'DDD' > DELETE ITEM"
7230   PRINT " 'ZZZ' > RETURN TO MENU"
7240   INPUT\\ " WHICH DO YOU REQUIRE: ";Q#
7250   IF Q#="DDD" OR Q#="ddd" THEN REMOVE
7260   IF Q#="ZZZ" OR Q#="zzz" THEN EXIT display
7270   IF Q#="" THEN Q#="#1"
7280   IF Q$(1)="#"
7290     count=count+Q$(2 TO)
7300   END IF
7310   IF count>cand(cord)-1 THEN count=cand
     (cord)-1
7320   IF count<0 THEN count=0
7330   IF Q#="ccc" OR Q#="CCC"
7340     INPUT "Amount to be added: ";amount
7350     INPUT "Is that correct: ";r#
7360     IF r#="y" OR r#="Y"
7370       account(cord,count)=account(cord,
         count)+amount
7380     END IF
7390   END IF
7400   IF cand(cord)=0 THEN EXIT display
7410 END REPEAT display
7420 END DEFine search

```

Commentary

Lines 7060 – 7070: For the purposes of the search module, the upper part of the screen, on which the items will be printed, will be coloured black, and the simplest way to accomplish this is to have the QL draw a block over the top of the screen.

Lines 7090 – 7150: If the item recalled from the file is a single item, then it is printed — though stripped of the indicator character which is tagged on to the beginning of the name. If the item is a main heading, not only is it printed, but its name is stored in HH\$ so that it can be printed out above any of its subheadings which follow. If the item is a subheading, HH\$ is printed, followed by the subheading, stripped of its indicator character.

Lines 7330 – 7390: Apart from deleting items, changes can be made to the value associated with a heading. This is done by entering a positive or negative figure by which the value of an item may be changed — not an absolute value which the item is to take. The advantage of this is that most changes will result in the need to add amounts to existing items as further expenditures or receipts are made under items which already exist. Thus, if an extra £100 is to be spent on car repairs, for which there is already a heading, all that needs to be done is to page through the file to that heading and enter '100'.

Testing

Run the program and call up the data which you have previously stored on microdrive. Now call up option 2 from the menu and check that you can page through the three items, finally returning to the menu again. Call up option 2 again, and this time try adding to or subtracting from the two totals you have previously entered. Paging through the items again should reveal that you have successfully altered their values.

Module 4.2.10: Deleting items

One final facility to be added in relation to existing items is deletion. In the case of Accountant, the deletion module is more complex than previous examples of the type. The reason for this is the existence of the groups formed around main headings. While there are no difficulties associated with the deletion of a single item or a subheading, what happens when a main heading is deleted? The answer, obviously, is that not only has the main heading to be taken out, but also all the subheadings associated with it — otherwise the account would become clogged with subheadings not attached to a main heading, making nonsense of the account.

Module 4.2.10: Lines 8000 – 8200

```

8000 REMark *****
8010 DEFine PROCedure REMOVE
8020 REMark *****
8030   pl=count : group=1
8040   IF account$(cord,pl,1)="$"
8050     REPEAT d_loop
8060       IF account$(cord,pl+group,1)="$"

```

```

8070      group=group+1
8080      ELSE
8090      EXIT d_loop
8100      END IF
8110      END REPEAT d_loop
8120      END IF
8130      FOR k=p1 TO cand(cord)-group
8140      account(cord,k)=account(cord,k+group)
8150      account$(cord,k)=account$(cord,k+group)
8160      NEXT k
8170      cand(cord)=cand(cord)-group
8180      account$(cord,cand(cord))=""
8190      account(cord,cand(cord))=0
8200      END DEFine REMOVE

```

Commentary

Line 8030: The position at which the deletion is to take place is sent from the previous module in the form of the variable COUNT. This is transferred for the purposes of the current module to PL. The variable GROUP records how many items need to be deleted. It is initially set to 1, and will only be increased if the item to be deleted is a main heading with subheadings attached.

Lines 8040 – 8120: These lines will only be activated if the item specified for deletion is a main heading. The loop scans down the following entries, counting how many of those items which follow are preceded by a '\$', indicating that they are sub-items for the main heading. The result of the count is kept in GROUP.

Lines 8130 – 8160: A typical loop to collapse an array and delete an item. The difference here is that instead of copying item X into space X - 1, and therefore copying each element down one place, items are transferred GROUP places, thus deleting GROUP items, or the number of items in the group based around a main item.

Testing

Following the test procedure for the previous module, you should not only be able to page through the items and alter them, you should also be able to delete items. If you delete the item labelled MAIN TEST, you should find that SUB-TEST disappears with it.

Module 4.2.11: Formatting a number

With the exception that this module does not need to be able to format dates in two character format, this module is identical to that used and commented on in Banker.

Module 4.2.11: Lines 10000 – 10160

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 DEFine FuNction format$(nn)
10020 REMark *****
10030      LOCAL i,n
10040      n=INT(ABS(nn*100)+5E-2)
10050      n$=""
10060      FOR i=6 TO 0 STEP -1
10070      n$=n$ & INT(n/10^i)
10080      n=n-10^i*INT(n/10^i)
10090      NEXT i
10100      FOR i=1 TO 4
10110      IF n$(i)<>"0" THEN EXIT i
10120      n$(i)=" "
10130      END FOR i
10140      n$=n$(LEN(n$)-6 TO LEN(n$)-2) & "."
10150      RETURN n$
10160      END DEFine format$

```

Module 4.2.12: Displaying the accounts

After all the preparation, the one module which makes sense of the whole thing, by displaying the account in its final form. Like the equivalent module in Banker, it looks complex, but, once you have seen the display, you will quickly see why everything is arranged as it is. Note that, unlike Banker, this module does not make provision for a printer output. Given the simplicity of the print output and the absence of colour controls it would be a simple matter to copy the techniques used in Banker across to the program if you require a hardcopy.

Module 4.2.12: Lines 9000 – 9460

```

9000 REMark *****
9010 DEFine PROCedure output
9020 REMark *****
9030      CLS
9040      tt=0 : ss=0
9050      AT 1,15 : PRINT cord$
9060      FOR i=0 TO cand(cord)-1
9070      IF account$(cord,i,1)="" THEN PRINT
9080      IF account$(cord,i,1)="" THEN PRINT
9090      PRINT account$(cord,i,2 TO);
9100      IF account$(cord,i,1)="" THEN PRINT
9110      IF account$(cord,i,1)<>"*" THEN PRINT
9120      tt=tt+account(cord,i)
9130      PRINT " ";
9140      IF account$(cord,i,1)="" THEN PRINT
9150      PRINT format$(account(cord,i))

```

```

9160      IF account$(cord,i,1)="$" THEN ss=ss+
          account(cord,i)
9170      END IF
9180      IF ss<>0 AND account$(cord,i+1,1)<>"$"
9190      PRINT "          -----"
9200      PRINT "
9210      PRINT format$(ss)
9220      ss=0
9230      END IF
9240      T$=INKEY$(-1)
9250      NEXT i
9260      PRINT "          ----"
9270      PRINT "TOTAL:                ";
9280      PRINT format$(tt)
9290      t2=0
9300      FOR i=0 TO cand(1-cord)
9310      IF account$(1-cord,i,1)<>"*"
9320      t2=t2+account(1-cord,i)
9330      END IF
9340      NEXT i
9350      IF cord=1
9360      cord2$="CREDIT"
9370      ELSE
9380      cord2$="DEBIT"
9390      END IF
9400      PRINT\cord2$;" BALANCE IS ";format$(t2)
9410      PRINT\OVERALL BALANCE IS ";
9420      IF (tt-t2)*(1-2*(cord=1))<0 THEN PRINT "-";
9430      PRINT format$(tt-t2)
9440      PRINT\PRESS ANY KEY TO QUIT"
9450      T$=INKEY$(-1)
9460      END DEFine account

```

Commentary

Line 9040: The variable TT will be used to store the running total for the account as it is printed. SS will hold sub-totals for groups of sub-items.

Lines 9070 – 9090: These lines print the item name. For a main item, one blank line is printed first to separate it from what has gone before, while for a subheading, the two spaces inset the item name by two spaces.

Lines 9130 – 9150: These lines deal with the printing of the amounts for single items and subheadings. Subheadings will be printed at the twenty-first position along the line, single items at position 30. If the item being dealt with is a subheading, then the sub-total for the items in the current group is stored temporarily in SS.

Lines 9180 – 9230: This IF operates only when a group is being processed, as indicated by the fact that SS is not equal to 0, and the next item is not part of the group — ie the group is complete. The effect of the loop is to print the total for the group in the main column of figures at position 30 along the line.

Line 9240: Only one item is printed at a time. This is to prevent the top part of the account scrolling off the top of the screen before it can be read. For each fresh item, a key must be pressed.

Lines 9290 – 9340: These lines scan the opposite side of the accounts to the one currently being printed and obtain a total of the figures in the variable T2.

Lines 9350 – 9430: The final items to be output are the total of the opposite side of the account and the balance of the account.

Testing

Reload the data you have previously stored on disk and simply call up option 3 on the main menu. Remember that to print out the whole account you will need to press a key for each item — the whole account will not appear immediately. If this test is successfully performed, the program is ready for use.

PROGRAM 4.3: BUDGET

Program function

Budget, the final program in this book, is, for most readers, one of the largest programs they will ever enter (or *want* to enter for that matter). From letters I receive about earlier and less capable versions, however, entering the program seems to be a worthwhile chore, given the results.

There is nothing terribly complex about Budget, it's just that it is designed to carry a great deal of data and perform a range of calculations on this data which help reveal a household financial picture over a rolling 12 month period. As I said at the beginning of this chapter, one of the strengths of the micro is its ability to present figures in an orderly and comprehensible fashion. Budget illustrates well a second strength, and that is that, when large bodies of data are being handled, it becomes possible to perform fairly straightforward calculations which would defeat most people working manually and yet which, when performed, open up new and enlightening ways of looking at the data.

The purpose of Budget is to allow the user to input figures for income and up to 60 monthly payments (regular or irregular) and to have an analysis performed upon them which will reveal the monthly balance of income over expenditure, the cumulative balance over the year, the average budget allocation needed to meet commitments over the year and any shortfall, from month to month, of the average budget payment compared to actual payments to date. In other words, Budget presents a straightforward picture of how the user's finances will appear over the year ahead. In addition, however, Budget is designed to be a 'what if' tool,

which allows the user to speculate about the effects of changes through the year without corrupting the original data. This is achieved by means of a set of 'shadow arrays' into which entries can be made, and the same analysis carried out, with no effect on the original data. To simplify the matter of entry, the whole of the current data on the 'real' side of the arrays can be copied into the 'hypothetical' side with a single keystroke, so that only changes relative to the real data have to be entered.

When all is said and done, really the only way to understand the attractions of Budget is to enter it and use it. An hour's playing with the program will demonstrate just how much it can tell you about your finances.

MONTHS	SEP	OCT	NOV
MONTHLY TOTAL	1653	1653	1653
BUDGET	1653	1653	1653
BUDGET BALANCE	0000	0000	0000
MAIN INCOME	1500	1500	1500
SUPP. INCOME	0200	0200	0200
TOTAL INCOME	1700	1700	1700
MONTH BALANCE	0047	0047	0047
CUM. BALANCE	0047	0094	0141

Figure 4.3: Part of Analysis Screen from Budget.

Module 4.3.1: Initialisation

The size of this module should be sufficient to convince you of the complexity of the program. The use of the arrays and variables will be described during the course of the program commentary.

Module 4.3.1: Lines 10000–10340

```

10000 REMark *****
10010 REMark initialise
10020 REMark *****
10030 INK 0 : PAPER 4 : CLS
10040 DIM payment$(1,59,14)
10050 DIM payments(1,59,11)
10060 DIM monthly(1,59)
10070 DIM paytotals(1,11)
10080 DIM b_balance(1,11)
10090 DIM balance(1,11)
10100 DIM income_1(1,11)
10110 DIM income_2(1,11)
10120 DIM month$(11,9)
10130 DIM y_budget(1)
10140 DIM items(1)
10150 real=0
10160 RESTORE

```

```

10170 FOR i=0 TO 11
10180   READ month$(i)
10190   month$(i)=month$(i) & " "
10200 NEXT i
10210 INPUT\\ "Load from microdrive (Y/N): ";q$
10220 IF q$="y" OR q$="Y"
10230   recall
10240 ELSE
10250   REPEAT check
10260     INPUT\\ "Current month number: ";q
10270     IF q>=1 AND q<=12 THEN EXIT check
10280   END REPEAT check
10290   curr_m=q-1
10300   year=curr_m+11
10305 test_data:GO TO 11000
10310   income
10320   new_headings
10330 END IF
10340 DATA "JANUARY", "FEBRUARY", "MARCH", "APRIL",
" MAY", "JUNE", "JULY", "AUGUST", "SEPTEMBER",
"OCTOBER", "NOVEMBER", "DECEMBER"

```

Module 4.3.2: The program menu

A standard menu module.

Module 4.3.2: Lines 11000–11470

```

11000 REMark *****
11010 REMark menu
11020 REMark *****
11030 REPEAT loop
11040   PAPER (4+real)
11050   CLS
11060   AT 1,16 : PRINT "BUDGET"
11070   PRINT\\ "Commands available:"
11080   PRINT\\ " 1) Display monthly analysis"
11090   PRINT " 2) Changes"
11100   PRINT " 3) New budget headings"
11110   PRINT " 4) Delete budget heading"
11120   PRINT " 5) Reset hypothetical data"
11130   PRINT " 6) Reset month"
11140   PRINT " 7) Store data"
11150   PRINT " 8) Change to ";
11160   IF real=0
11170     PRINT "hypothetical";
11180   ELSE
11190     PRINT "real";
11200   END IF
11210   PRINT " data"
11220   PRINT " 9) Stop"
11230   INPUT\\ "Which do you require: ";z
11240   SELECT ON z
11250     ON z=1 : display
11270     ON z=2 : changes

```

```

11290      ON z=3 : new_headings
11310      ON z=4 : remove
11330      ON z=5 : reset_data
11350      ON z=6 : reset_month
11370      ON z=7 : store
11390      ON z=8 : real=1-real
11410      ON z=9
11420      CLS
11430      AT 10,16 : PRINT "BUDGET"
11440      PRINT #0,"Program terminated"
11450      STOP
11460      END SElect
11470      END REFeat loop

```

Commentary

Line 11040: The variable REAL will be used to indicate whether the real or hypothetical data is being worked on at the moment. From the user's point of view, this is made plain by the fact that when working with real data the screen will be green, and when working with the hypothetical figures this will change to cyan.

Lines 11150 – 11210: Just a small touch, this, but a nice one nevertheless. Since the program can only change between the two states of dealing with real and hypothetical data, this particular option on the menu indicates which of the two will be accessed by choosing option 8, eg if the program is currently in the real data mode, the prompt will read:

Change to hypothetical data
and vice versa.

Module 4.3.3: Short functions

In the course of this program, we shall be calling on a number of trivial functions or procedures. Rather than dignify them all with a module of their own, we shall adopt the expedient of a single module consisting of four short sections. They will be briefly commented on here, but their real usefulness will only become apparent when they are used.

Module 4.3.3: Lines 25000 – 25260

```

25000 REMark *****
25010 REMark short functions
25020 REMark *****
25030  DEFine FuNction i_m
25040      LOcal i_m
25050      i_m=i-12*(i>11)
25060      RETurn i_m
25070  END DEFine i_m
25080  :
25090  DEFine PROCedure table (temp#)

```

```

25100      space : PRINT temp#; : space
25110      PRINT
25120      END DEFine
25130      :
25140      DEFine PROCedure table2 (temp)
25150      OVER 1
25160      PRINT FILL$(" ",16+5*(i-start));
25170      OVER 0
25180      form_print (temp) : space
25190      PRINT
25200      END DEFine table2
25210      :
25220      DEFine PROCedure space
25230      PAPER 0
25240      PRINT " ";
25250      PAPER real+4
25260      END DEFine space

```

Commentary

Lines 25030 – 25070: This function is intended to cope with the problem which arises when the start of the year, as the program sees it, does not correspond to the start of the calendar year. If the program is currently starting from August and looking 12 months ahead, problems will be encountered in program loops which scan the year, when the transition is made from December to January, a move from month 5 to 6 as far as the program is concerned but from 12 to 1 (or rather 11 to 0) as far as any data goes which is stored in arrays from January to December. The simple answer adopted here is that all loops in this program completely ignore the transition from December to January. If they are to start in December, they count 12, 13, 14, etc. This function is given the job of providing a variable to replace the loop variable, which is assumed to be I, with another which will count 12, 1, 2, etc.

Lines 25090 – 25120: A formatting aid. When it comes to printing out a table, this procedure will accept a heading and print an inverse space immediately before and after it, thus facilitating building up columns. To do this it calls up SPACE, described below.

Lines 25140 – 25200: In the absence of a TAB facility in SuperBASIC, a good simulation can be arrived at with OVER. This module will print a line of spaces on the current printing line, with OVER set. This has the effect of moving the print position to the right without corrupting anything which is already on the screen. The module assumes that it is being called from a loop with the loop variable I, and the position on the screen will depend on the value of two variables, I and START.

Lines 25220 – 25260: These lines print an inverse or black space used in laying out tables.

Testing

1) If you set the value of I directly by entering:

i = x [ENTER] (where X is a number between 0 and 23)

you should find that PRINT I_M will print out the value of I, less 12 if I was greater than 11.

2) Type:

```
real = 0 [ENTER]
```

```
table ("Name") [ENTER]
```

you should see the word echoed back with an inverse space before and after (this is also a sufficient test of SPACE).

3) Type:

```
start = 1 [ENTER]
```

```
i = 2 [ENTER]
```

```
print:table2 (123) [ENTER]
```

and you should see '0123' printed near the centre of the current printing line.

Module 4.3.4: Entering figures for income

This is a straightforward module which stores income under two headings, main and additional, in the arrays INCOME__1 and INCOME__2.

Module 4.3.4: Lines 20000–20160

```
20000 REMark *****
20010 DEFine PROCedure income
20020 REMark *****
20030 CLS
20040 AT 1,13 : PRINT "CHANGE INCOME"
20050 PRINT"\ Input '\ ' to leave unchanged"\
20060 FOR i=curr_m TO year
20070 INPUT\ (month$(i_m) & ": Main (" &
income_1(real,i_m) & "): ");q$
IF q$<>"\ "
income_1(real,i_m)="0" & q$
END IF
INPUT (month$(i_m) & ": Additional ("
& income_2(real,i_m) & "): ");q$
IF q$<>"\ "
income_2(real,i_m)="0" & q$
END IF
NEXT i
20150 NEXT i
20160 END DEFine income
```

Commentary

Line 20060: CURR__M is the variable which holds the number within the calendar year of the current month. YEAR is simply CURR__M plus 11.

Lines 20070 – 20140: The module is later used when resetting the program to start at a new month, so provision is made for the input of \ (a key conveniently near ENTER) to leave a figure unchanged. Otherwise, the user is prompted with the month name and asked to supply the two income figures for that month. Note the use of I_M to translate the I loop, which may run from 11 to 22, into a value in the range 0–11. Apart from I_M, the position in which the data will be stored is determined by the value of REAL, which dictates whether the real or hypothetical halves of the arrays are to be accessed.

Testing

Run the program, answering N to the prompt to load from microdrive, and you should be prompted for 24 income figures. When you have finished entering them, the program will stop with a BAD NAME error as it tries to call a procedure you have not entered yet. Type:

```
for i = 0 to 11:print income__1(0,i),income__2(0,i):next i
```

You should see the income figures you have entered displayed.

Module 4.3.5: Entering payment headings

Just as the program needs to know the income figures when it starts up, it is hardly going to be much use without some information as to the payments to be made. This procedure can be called at any time when the main program has been entered but is always called first when the program is RUN and data not loaded from tape.

Module 4.3.5: Lines 16000–16270

```
16000 REMark *****
16010 DEFine PROCedure new_headings
16020 REMark *****
16030 REPEAT nh_loop
16040 CLS
16050 AT 1,6 : PRINT "INPUT OF NEW PAYMENTS"
16060 PRINT"\ Precede name with a '*' if
you do!" "not wish it to be budgeted."
PRINT"\ Enter 'ZZZ' as name to quit."
16080 INPUT\ "Name for new payment: ";q$
16090 IF q$="zzz" OR q$="ZZZ"
update
EXIT nh_loop
END IF
16130 IF items(real)=60
```

```

16140 PRINT\ " No room for more data"
16150 t$=INKEY$(-1)
16160 RETURN
16170 END IF
16180 CLS
16190 PRINT\ " PAYMENTS FOR ";q$\\
16200 FOR i=curr_m TO year
16210 PRINT month$(i_m);
16220 INPUT payments(real,items(real),i_m)
16230 NEXT i
16240 payment$(real,items(real))=q$ &
"
16250 items(real)=items(real)+1
16260 END REPEAT nh_loop
16270 END DEFINE new_headings

```

Commentary

Line 16060: The meaning of this prompt will not be obvious until you have some experience of the program. We have already noted that one of the functions of the program is to provide an average figure per month to cover all the bills which must be met during the course of a year. It is possible, however, to exempt a bill from this budgeting process. Take, for example, the situation where you intend to go on holiday at the end of the current 12-month period, at a cost of £500, knowing that in that month you will receive a holiday bonus, also of £500. The bonus is duly entered under additional income and the holiday as a payment. The result is that the average budget figure for each of the next 12 months is increased by £42, so that, by the end of the 12 months, the holiday will have been paid for. This is clearly not what you want, since there is no need to budget in advance for the holiday. In this case, the payment for the holiday is entered, but the payment name is preceded by a "*", as a signal to later parts of the program that the associated bill is not to be included when calculating the average monthly budget.

Line 16100: The next module you will enter, which performs the calculations on the bare figures you provide.

Line 16220: The array PAYMENTS will hold the amounts entered for each bill. There are three dimensions to the array:

- 1) The side of the array (real or hypothetical).
- 2) The number of the payment (0–59). The number of payments registered on each side of the array is held in the two element array ITEMS.
- 3) The month (0–11).

Line 16240: The name of the payment is held in PAYMENT\$, which is padded with spaces to ensure standardised length of payment names when they are printed in later tables.

Testing

If the program has been initialised, you should be able to type:

new__headings [ENTER]

and be prompted to input a heading. Respond with:

TEST1

followed by a series of monthly payment figures, corresponding to the number of the month.

When you are prompted for the next payment name, enter 'zzz' and the procedure will terminate. Now type:

```

print payment$(0,0) [ENTER]
for i=0 to 11:print payments(0,0,i):next i
print items(0)

```

You should see the payment name, the numbers from 1 to 12 and finally the number 1, indicating that ITEMS(0) records a single item on the real side of the arrays.

Module 4.3.6: Data files — store

A standard module, this is given at this early stage because, of all the programs in this book, Budget is probably the most tiresome to have to re-enter data manually for. Note that not all of the arrays dimensioned when the program is initialised are saved. The reason for this is that most of them are derived from the income and payments figures you have already entered. Rather than saving them, it is more economical simply to save the income and payments and recalculate the rest when the data is reloaded.

Module 4.3.6: Lines 26000–26260

```

26000 REMark *****
26010 DEFINE PROCEDURE store
26020 REMark *****
26030 CLS
26040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "SAVE DATA"
26050 INPUT\ " Name of data file:";file$
26060 tfile$="mdv1_" & file$
26070 DELETE tfile$
26080 OPEN_NEW #B,"mdv1_" & file$
26090 PRINT #B,curr_m : PRINT #B,year
26100 FOR i=0 TO 1
26110 PRINT #B,items(i)
26120 IF items(i)>0
26130 FOR j=0 TO items(i)-1
26140 PRINT #B,payment$(i,j)
26150 FOR k=0 TO 11

```

```

26160      PRINT #8,payments(i,j,k)
26170      NEXT k
26180    NEXT j
26190    FOR j=0 TO 11
26200      PRINT #8,income_1(i,j)
26210      PRINT #8,income_2(i,j)
26220    NEXT j
26230  END IF
26240 NEXT i
26250 CLOSE#8
26260 END DEFine store

```

Module 4.3.7: Data files — recall

A standard module. Note the call to the UPDATE module, which you have not entered yet, but which will fill out the arrays with figures derived from the income and payments stored on the microdrive.

Module 4.3.7: Lines 27000 – 27260

```

27000 REMark *****
27010 DEFine PROCedure recall
27020 REMark *****
27030 CLS
27040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "RECALL DATA"
27050 DIR mdv1_
27060 INPUT\" Name of data file: ";file$
27070 OPEN IN #8,"mdv1_" & file$
27080 INPUT #8,curr_m,year
27090 FOR i=0 TO 1
27100   INPUT #8,items(i)
27110   IF items(i)<>0
27120     FOR j=0 TO items(i)-1
27130       INPUT #8,payment$(i,j)
27140       FOR k=0 TO 11
27150         INPUT #8,payments(i,j,k)
27160       NEXT k
27170     NEXT j
27180   FOR j=0 TO 11
27190     INPUT #8,income_1(i,j)
27200     INPUT #8,income_2(i,j)
27210   NEXT j
27220 END IF
27230 NEXT i
27240 CLOSE#8
27250 update
27260 END DEFine recall

```

Module 4.3.8: The calculations

All the important calculations for the program are carried out by this pro-

cedure. There is nothing complex about what is done, it is simply cumbersome, since the payments must be scanned in totally separate ways — once along the months from 0 to 11 and once in order of payments, from 0 to a possible 59. Be warned that, when the program holds the maximum number of payments, this procedure takes some considerable time to complete.

Module 4.3.8: Lines 14000 – 14290

```

14000 REMark *****
14010 DEFine PROCedure update
14020 REMark *****
14030 FLASH 1 : PRINT "CALCULATING" : FLASH 0
14040 IF items(real)=0 THEN RETURN
14050 y_budget(real)=0 : cum_budget=0
14060 cum=0
14070 FOR i=0 TO items(real)-1
14080   y_total=0
14090   IF payments$(real,i,1)<>"*"
14100     FOR j=0 TO 11
14110       y_total=y_total+payments(real,i,j)
14120     NEXT j
14130     monthly(real,i)=y_total/12
14140     y_budget(real)=y_budget(real)+
      y_total/12
14150   END IF
14160 NEXT i
14170 FOR i=curr_m TO year
14180   paytotals(real,i_m)=0
14190   FOR j=0 TO items(real)-1
14200     paytotals(real,i_m)=paytotals(real,
      i_m)+payments(real,j,i_m)
14210     IF payment$(real,j,1)<>"*"
14220       cum_budget=cum_budget+payments
        (real,j,i_m)
14230   END IF
14240 NEXT j
14250 b_balance(real,i_m)=y_budget(real)*
      (i-curr_m+1)-cum_budget
14260 cum=cum+income_1(real,i_m)+income_2
      (real,i_m)-paytotals(real,i_m)
14270 balance(real,i_m)=cum
14280 NEXT i
14290 END DEFine update

```

Commentary

Line 14030: As a reassurance that the program is not locked up, the word CALCULATING is flashed on the screen while this procedure is being carried out.

Lines 14070 – 14160: For each payment (the I loop), the payments made in each month (the J loop) are added together in the temporary variable

Y__TOTAL. One-twelfth of this total payment over the year is saved in the corresponding line of the array MONTHLY, which records what the monthly budget figure for each payment is. In addition, the same figure is added to Y__BUDGET, which will, by the end of the I loop, hold the total of the average monthly payments for all of the bills — ie the overall average monthly payment. Note that line 14090 excludes any bills whose names begin with '*' from this process.

Lines 14170 – 14280: These lines deal with figures which will apply to each month separately. For each month of the year, the J loop adds together all the payments to be made in that month and stores them in the array PAY-TOTALS. Within the same loop, CUM__BUDGET keeps track of the total of payments made on items which are included in the average budget. Each time the J loop ends, CUM__BUDGET will hold the total payments on budgeted items since the year (as represented by the I loop) began.

Line 14250: The array B__BALANCE is used to record how much, in any particular month, the actual payments on budgeted items are ahead or behind the amount put aside in the average monthly budget. For instance, if a large budgeted payment is to be made at the end of the year, one-twelfth of it will be put aside in each of the preceding months and a large surplus will build up in B__BALANCE. The contents of B__BALANCE for each month are calculated by taking the average monthly budget figure (Y__BUDGET), multiplying it by the number of months since the year started and then subtracting all the payments to date on budgeted items (CUM__BUDGET).

Lines 14260 – 14270: The cumulative balance, ie how much has been saved out of income since the beginning of the year, is stored in BALANCE. It is calculated by adding the income figures each month to the temporary variable CUM and subtracting the total payments.

Testing

It is not really practical to test this module until we have entered the next series, which allows the figures to be dumped out in the form of a table.

Module 4.3.9: Formatting a number

We have already looked, in the preceding programs in this chapter, at the problems of formatting a number. The current module is simpler than those which have gone before, because Budget works only with integer numbers up to 9999.

Module 4.3.9: Lines 24000 – 24130

```
24000 REMark *****
24010 DEFine PROCedure form_print (nn)
24020 REMark *****
```

```
24030 LOCAL i,n
24040 n=INT (ABS (nn)+5E-2)
24050 n$=""
24060 FOR i=3 TO 0 STEP -1
24070   n$=n$ & INT (n/10^i)
24080   n=n-10^i*INT (n/10^i)
24090 NEXT i
24100 IF nn<0 THEN PAPER 2
24110 PRINT n$;
24120 PAPER real+4
24130 END DEFine four
```

Testing

Type:

```
real=0[ENTER]
form__print 1[ENTER]
```

The result should be the printing of '0001' on a green background.

Module 4.3.10: Printing a heading for a table

In a moment, we shall be entering the main display module of the program, or rather two main display modules. Since both parts of the display need a heading for three-monthly columns, a separate module for this purpose is included.

Module 4.3.10: Lines 23000 – 23110

```
23000 REMark *****
23010 DEFine PROCedure table_top
23020 REMark *****
23030 LOCAL i
23040 CLS
23050 PAPER 0 : INK 7
23060 PRINT "MONTHS      ";
23070 FOR i=start TO start+2
23080   PRINT month$(i_m, 1 TO 3); " ";
23090 NEXT i
23100 PAPER real+4 : INK 0
23110 END DEFine table_top
```

Commentary

Lines 23070 – 23090: The I__M function is used to print out the first three letters of the names of three months, starting with the value held in START.

Testing

Provided that the program has been initialised, thus loading the month names into MONTH\$, type:

table_top(0)

and you should see MONTHS, JAN, FEB and MAR spaced out across the top of the screen in inverse lettering.

Module 4.3.11: Displaying the payments

We have now entered all that we need in order to be able to print out an orderly table of the payments which the user has recorded.

Module 4.3.11: Lines 12000 – 12380

```
12000 REMark *****
12010 DEFine PROCedure display
12020 REMark *****
12030 CLS
12040 AT 1,13 : PRINT "BUDGET DISPLAY"
12050 REPEAT check
12060 INPUT\ "Number of month to start: ";
start
IF start>=1 AND start<=12 THEN EXIT
check
12080 END REPEAT check
start=start-1
12090 IF start-12*(start>=curr_m)>=curr_m-3
12100 THEN start=curr_m-3
12110 start=start+12*(start<0)
12120 INPUT\ "Analysis only (Y/N): ";q#
12130 IF q#="y" OR q#="Y" THEN analysis :
RETURN
12140 FOR i=0 TO 45 STEP 15
12150 table_top
12160 PAPER 0 : INK 7
12170 PRINT " B "
12180 PAPER 4+real : INK 0
12190 AT 1,0
12200 FOR j=0 TO 14
12210 IF i+j=items(real) THEN EXIT j
12220 space
12230 PRINT payment$(real,i+j);
12240 space
12250 FOR k=start TO start+2
12260 form_print payments(real,i+j,k-12
*(k>11))
12270 space
12280 NEXT k
12290 form_print (monthly(real,i+j))
12300 space : PRINT
12310 END FOR j
12320 PAPER 0 : PRINT FILL$(" ",36);
12330 PAPER real+4
12340 t$=INKEY$(-1)
12350 IF i+j=items(real) THEN EXIT i
```

```
12360 END FOR i
12370 analysis
12380 END DEFine display
```

Commentary

Lines 12050 – 12110: The start month number for the three-monthly display is received into START. Since Budget works on a single 12-month period, trying to start a table in the last month, or the month before, would produce a nonsense, wrapping around to the beginning of the year. For this reason, if the START given is not a full three months before the current month, it is reduced — eg if the current month is July and the requested start is May, this will be reduced to April, so that April, May and June will be represented.

Lines 12120 – 12130: The next module will provide for the printing of an analysis of the figures displayed by the current table. These lines allow for the user to dispense with the display of individual bills and go straight to the analysis.

Lines 12140 – 12360: This loop allows the full 60 bills to be screened in four successive displays.

Lines 12150 – 12180: The top of the table is printed, and an extra heading on the right of the screen — B — under which will be placed the average monthly budget for each item.

Lines 12200 – 12310: These two embedded loops print the name of each payment on the left of the screen, then the figures for the three months, using SPACE to separate the items on each line.

Testing

If you have entered some data, type:

goto 11000

and call up option 1 on the menu. Specify a month and you should see an orderly presentation of any bills you have entered. The display will terminate with an error when you press a key, since the next module is called at the end of this one. Perform the test again, but this time use the menu to change to the hypothetical half of the array to ensure that the figures in that half are properly displayed. Now that you can display the results of changes easily, it would be wise to check modules like NEW_HEADINGS to make sure they work on both sides of the arrays.

Module 4.3.12: Displaying the analysis

As mentioned in the the commentary on the last module, once the figures for payments have been displayed, the program then goes on to display the

analysis which was carried out by the UPDATE module. The short functions we have already defined make the printing of the new table a very simple matter. A list of headings is printed using TABLE, then TABLE2 prints the columns of corresponding figures for the three months covered.

Module 4.3.12: Lines 13000 – 13270

```

13000 REMark *****
13010 DEFine PROCedure analysis
13020 REMark *****
13030 table_top
13040 AT 1,0
13050 table "MONTHLY TOTAL "
13060 table "BUDGET "
13070 table "BUDGET BALANCE"
13080 table "MAIN INCOME "
13090 table "SUPP. INCOME "
13100 table "TOTAL INCOME "
13110 table "MONTH BALANCE "
13120 table "CUM. BALANCE "
13130 FOR i=start TO start+2
13140 AT 1,0
13150 table2 (paytotals(real,i_m))
13160 table2 (y_budget(real))
13170 table2 (b_balance(real,i_m))
13180 table2 (income_1(real,i_m))
13190 table2 (income_2(real,i_m))
13200 table2 (income_1(real,i_m)+income_2
(real,i_m))
13210 table2 (income_1(real,i_m)+income_2
(real,i_m)-paytotals(real,i_m))
13220 table2 (balance(real,i_m))
13230 NEXT i
13240 PAPER 0 : PRINT FILL$(" ",37);
13250 PAPER real+4
13260 t$=INKEY$(-1)
13270 END DEFine analysis

```

Testing

The test conducted on the previous module can now be continued through to the display of the analysis of the figures you have entered. Remember that this is your first real check of the working of the UPDATE module, so do ensure that figures displayed make some sense.

Module 4.3.13: Reset_data

So far, we have not really experimented much with the hypothetical capabilities of the program. When you *do* start to use those capabilities, you will sometimes find that you have built up such a body of changes that getting back to a semblance of the real situation will involve a lot of tire-

some deletion. This module relieves you of that need by simply copying the real half of the arrays over into the hypothetical half so that you can start your experiments with a clean slate.

Module 4.3.13: Lines 15000 – 15190

```

15000 REMark *****
15010 DEFine PROCedure reset_data
15020 REMark *****
15030 y_budget(1)=y_budget(0)
15040 FOR i=0 TO items(0)-1
15050 payment$(1,i)=payment$(0,i)
15060 monthly(1,i)=monthly(0,i)
15070 FOR j=0 TO 11
15080 payments(1,i,j)=payments(0,i,j)
15090 NEXT j
15100 NEXT i
15110 FOR i=0 TO 11
15120 paytotals(1,i)=paytotals(0,i)
15130 b_balance(1,i)=b_balance(0,i)
15140 income_1(1,i)=income_1(0,i)
15150 income_2(1,i)=income_2(0,i)
15160 balance(1,i)=balance(0,i)
15170 NEXT i
15180 items(1)=items(0)
15190 END DEFine reset_data

```

Testing

You will need to have made some entries on the hypothetical side of the arrays and checked that they have been registered. Call up menu option 5 and then display the hypothetical figures. They should now be identical with the real figures.

Module 4.3.14: Changing the month

The program will not be of much use if it is always going to be stuck on the same 12-month period, so this module makes provision for the start month to be altered as time passes. The array simply accepts payment and income figures for the new months which have come in at the end of the period. If the change were from May to July, figures for next May and next June would be requested for each payment heading and also for main and supplementary income.

Module 4.3.14: Lines 17000 – 17320

```

17000 REMark *****
17010 DEFine PROCedure reset_month
17020 REMark *****

```

```

17030 CLS
17040 AT 1,13 : PRINT "UPDATE MONTH"
17050 REPEAT check
17060   INPUT\ "Number of new month (1-12): ";
   month2
17070   IF month2>=1 AND month2<=12 THEN EXIT
   check
17080 END REPEAT check
17090 month2=month2-1
17100 IF month2=curr_m
17110   PRINT\ "Program already on that month"
17120   t$=INKEY$(-1)
17130   RETURN
17140 END IF
17150 IF month2<curr_m THEN month2=month2+12
17160 FOR i=curr_m TO month2-1
17170   CLS
17180   AT 1,13 : PRINT "UPDATE MONTH"
17190   PRINT\ "Input amounts for next ";month$(
   i_m);
17200   FOR j=0 TO items(real)-1
17210     PRINT payment$(0,j); " ";payments
   (0,j,i_m); " ";
17220     INPUT payments(0,j,i_m)
17230   NEXT j
17240   INPUT\ "Main Income: ";income_1(0,i_m)
17250   INPUT\ "Additional income: ";income_2
   (0,i_m)
17260 NEXT i
17270 curr_m=month2-12*(month2>11)
17280 year=curr_m+11
17290 real=0
17300 update
17310 reset_data
17320 END DEFine reset_month

```

Commentary

Lines 17160 – 17260: These two loops shuttle through all the available payments, displaying the figures they were set for in what is now the previous year and inviting new figures.

Testing

Call up option 6 from the menu and specify the next month to the current month. You should be invited to give one complete set of payment income figures for the new end of Budget's year. You will also find, in using the display function, that the year start and end have been adjusted accordingly.

Module 4.3.15: Making changes

The first of a series of four modules which, together, allow changes to be made to existing income or payment headings. The purpose of the current module is merely to determine whether income or payments are to be changed.

Module 4.3.15: Lines 18000 – 18130

```

18000 REMark *****
18010 DEFine PROCedure changes
18020 REMark *****
18030 CLS
18040 AT 1,15 : PRINT "CHANGES"
18050 PRINT\ " Do you wish to change figures
   for:"
18060 PRINT\ " 1) A payment\ " 2) Income"
18070 INPUT\ " Which do you require: ";z2
18080 SElect ON z2
18090   ON z2=1 : change_payment
18100   ON z2=2 : income
18110 END SElect
18120 IF z2=1 OR z2=2 THEN update
18130 END DEFine changes

```

Testing

The module can be tested as far as income goes since it uses the income entry module entered earlier. Call up changes and specify income. You should be invited to give new main and additional figures for each of the coming 12 months.

Module 4.3.16: Checking a payment name

Several previous programs, like Nnumber and Accountant, have needed provision to check that items requested by the user are in fact present in the file. Budget includes a separate module to make this check, returning the results of the search to the next module in the form of the variable FOUND.

Module 4.3.16: Lines 22000 – 22150

```

22000 REMark *****
22010 DEFine PROCedure find (q$)
22020 REMark *****
22030 found=0
22040 q$=q$ & FILL$(" ",14-LEN(q$))
22050 FOR place=0 TO items(real)-1
22060   IF q$=payment$(real,place)
22070     found=1
22080   EXIT place
22090 END IF

```

```

22100 NEXT place
22110 PRINT\ " Item not found, please check
      with\" monthly display."
22120 t$=INKEY$(-1)
22130 RETURN
22140 END FOR place
22150 END DEFine find

```

Module 4.3.17: Changing the figures for a payment

This module is similar to the one used to change income. Monthly figures for the specified payment heading are displayed and the user is invited either to confirm or change them.

Module 4.3.17: Lines 19000 – 19150

```

19000 REMark *****
19010 DEFine PROCedure change_payment
19020 REMark *****
19030 INPUT\ "Payment to be changed: ";q$
19040 find (q$)
19050 IF NOT found THEN RETURN
19060 CLS
19070 PRINT\ " ";payment$(real,place)
19080 PRINT\ " Input new amount or '\ ' to
      leave.\""
19090 FOR i=curr_m TO year
19100 INPUT (month$(i_m) & "(" & payments
      (real,place,i_m) & ")"; );q$
19110 IF q$<>"\"
19120 payments(real,place,i_m)="0" & q$
19130 END IF
19140 NEXT i
19150 END DEFine change_payment

```

Testing

Just as you were able to change income figures, you should now be able to call up menu option 2, specify a payment heading and re-enter the figures for that payment.

Module 4.3.18: Deleting items

The final module of the main program allows an entire payment heading, its name and the 12-monthly figures associated with it, to be removed from the file.

Module 4.3.18: Lines 21000 – 21160

```

21000 REMark *****
21010 DEFine PROCedure remove
21020 REMark *****
21030 CLS
21040 AT 1,14 : PRINT "DELETIONS"

```

```

21050 INPUT\ " Name of payment to be deleted: "
      ;q$
21060 find (q$)
21070 IF NOT found THEN RETURN
21080 items(real)=items(real)-1
21090 FOR j=place TO items(real)-1
21100 payment$(real,j)=payment$(real,j+1)
21110 FOR k=0 TO 11
21120 payments(real,j,k)=payments(real,
      j+1,k)
21130 NEXT k
21140 NEXT j
21150 update
21160 END DEFine remove

```

Testing

You should now be able to delete payment headings by calling up menu option 4. If this facility works correctly, the program is ready for use.

APPENDIX

Instructions for Use of Checksum Generator Tables

The following short program is designed to act as a check that the program you have entered is the same in every important respect as those from which the programs in this book were listed out. It does this by reading the program file from microdrive and successively adding and subtracting the values of the characters which make up each line of the program, excluding spaces. The values produced are known as 'checksums' and, if a program line is copied correctly from one program to another and examined by the same checksum generator, it should produce the same checksum — if there is an error it should be indicated by a difference in the checksums. It is possible to make changes in a line which will result in the same checksum being calculated for it, but it is unlikely that this will happen often.

If you wish to check your program against the tables, you will have to load the Checksum Generator into memory and then place a cartridge bearing the program to be checked in drive 1. Run the Checksum Generator and supply the program name. You will also be asked to supply the start and finish lines for the table. This will allow you to select either a specific module(s) or to enter 1 and 99999 (an impossibly high line number) to generate a table for the whole program.

The tables are laid out in modules, with the start line of each module marked. Line numbers are not included for the tables since this would make them impossibly large. To read the table, find the module you want, then read each line of the table from left to right. Since the tables in the book and the tables you will generate will be of the same format, you should have no difficulty in comparing them.

If the tables are exactly alike, it is highly probable that the program is entered correctly in every respect. If you come across lines where the checksums differ between your table and that contained in the book, go to the offending line and compare it very carefully with what is contained in the listing in the book — you will probably find that there is an error. Note that differences in spacing will not result in differences in checksums — spaces are ignored. If you cannot find *any* difference, there is always a small possibility that last-minute changes during the production of the book have somehow not been recorded in the checksum table, so that the

checksum in the book refers to a line which has been subsequently changed. We make every effort to ensure that this does not happen but it is wise to bear in mind this possibility if you cannot find a difference and the program runs correctly.

Checksum Generator

```

1000 REMark *****
1010 REMark control
1020 REMark *****
1030 INK 7 : PAPER 3 : CLS
1040 count=0
1050 INPUT "Name of program: ";program$
1060 INPUT "Start Line: ";start
1070 INPUT "Finish line: ";finish
1080 program$="mdv1_" & program$
1090 INPUT "Printer output (Y/N): ";hard$
1100 hard=hard$="Y" OR hard$="y"
1110 IF hard
1120 OPEN #7,ser1
1130 ELSE
1140 OPEN #7,scr
1150 INK#7,7 : PAPER#7,3
1160 CLS#7
1170 END IF
1180 PRINT#7,"CHECKSUM TABLE FOR ";program$
1190 PRINT#7,"Start line is ";start
1200 PRINT#7,"Finish line is ";finish\
1210 OPEN #8,program$
1220 :
1230 :
1240 REPEAT lines
1250 INPUT #8,line$
1260 line_number=line$
1270 IF line_number>finish THEN EXIT lines
1280 IF line_number>start
1290 analyse
1300 check_print
1310 END IF
1320 IF EOF(#8) THEN EXIT lines
1330 END REPEAT lines
1340 :
1350 :
1360 PRINT#7 : CLOSE #7
1370 CLOSE #8
2000 REMark *****
2010 DEFine PROCedure check_print
2020 REMark *****
2030 IF line_number/1000=INT(line_number/1000)
2040 PRINT#7,\\line_number;
" *****"
count=0
2050
2060 END IF

```

```

2070 number$=" " & checksum
2080 number$=number$(LEN(number$)-4 TO)
2090 PRINT#7,'number$;
2100 count=count+1
2110 IF hard AND count=6
2120 count=0
2130 PRINT#7
2140 END IF
2150 END DEFine check_print
3000 REMark *****
3010 DEFine PROCedure analyse
3020 REMark *****
3030 checksum=0
3040 FOR i=1 TO LEN(line$)
3050 IF line$(i)<>" "
3060 IF i/2=INT(i/2)
3070 checksum=checksum+CODE(line$(i))
3080 ELSE
3090 checksum=checksum-CODE(line$(i))
3100 END IF
3110 END IF
3120 NEXT i
3130 END DEFine analyse

```

CHECKSUM TABLES

Anaclock

```

1000 *****
-1 -91 -3 335 214 3
47 282 9 -138 116 134
246 241 181 179 -67 -66
-18 49 59
2000 *****
-2 -154 -4 44 -65 214
-1 14 48 47
3000 *****
-5 -200 -5 16 -38 -314
129 26 -58 -382 -105 17
37 52 118 118 -38 49
48
4000 *****
-4 -165 -6 18 -45 128
218 238 283 223 4 -96
9 52 51
5000 *****
-5 -244 -7 -128 123 8
22 116 -125 -75 58 -57
77 118 -91 58 49
6000 *****
-4 -388 -8 -1 -44 -44
234 212 231 289 238 216
51 -68 -2 -61 -253 139
131 -243 -87
Clock
1000 *****
-1 -91 -5 5 49 -9
-127 188 126 65 -61 -3
56 55
2000 *****
-2 -154 -4 181 584 -116
-1 14 48 47

```

```

3000 *****
-3 -200 -5 68 15 -31
-315 128 25 -51 -292 -186
16 36 51 189 117 65
-32 47 57
4000 *****
-4 -144 -6 158 -94 -69
-182 161 -101 61 -95 31
53 52
5000 *****
-5 -264 -7 38 -81 122
7 -55 27 -78 -184 -18
-98 51 58
6000 *****
-6 -143 -8 -112 -68 187
-64 -44 -65 -67 115 -37
-58 113 -61 41 -62 187
-65 -134 -55 119 -58 -45
-59 -24

```

Timer

```

1000 *****
-43 -91 -45 5 49 -5
67 -18 49 48
2000 *****
-44 -154 -46 611 28 121
89 14 48 47
3000 *****
-45 -147 -47 -32 67 64
-344 199 212 72 86 -61
152 92 62 89 181 -184
87 1 -62 68 -81 -153
-66 56 -6 -38 169 287
154 34 29 38 27 53
52

```

```

4000 *****
-46 -256 -48 -48 168 -475
-05 -55 58 27 -26 128
02 44 -185 18 -86 48
47

5000 *****
-47 -217 -49 66 66 31
86 153 83 -15 148 -111
-287 -145 -27 135 -128 -31
132 -131 -17 83 -145 63
-86 168 -5 94 -67 47
46

6000 *****
-48 -198 -58 38 124 8
46 45

7000 *****
-49 -238 -51 -158 168 284
-94 -37 -31 9 32 -67
54 58 26 -58 -26 12
-89 5 29 -54 51 58

8000 *****
-58 -319 -52 63 -34 -67
-72 -91 -231 -81 -6 57
-88 78 -37 26 -6 81
32 46 -18 14 -66 -19
113 -631 -11 -299 92 61
-57 -142 51 58

9000 *****
-51 -236 -53 -24 61 83
-43 28 92 78 -65 38
-62 47 66

10000 *****
-49 148 -47 -56 -119 -66
-13 158 -57 -69 73 149
-287 17 185 158 -387 49
-19 -201 -109 -86 -18 -261
28 -66 -85 56 -92 18
-186 98 -184 -123 -26 -185
-184

11000 *****
-6 225 -4 -119 -24 -182
54 -217 -225 -17 -267 58
-144 -114 -141 -153 35

Event
100 *****
-1 -91 -3 5 49 68
-127 3 -228 2 -61 284
-4 55 54

2000 *****
-2 -154 -4 611 19 182
15 49 48

3000 *****
-3 -288 -47 -16 67 -223
-678 -93 63 18 -32 -195
12 24 -129 -285 231 -73
-161 -214 262 -94 -26 256
133 38 -46 285 -84 18
48 -141 47 -55 138 -154
128 -29 58 69

4000 *****
-4 -158 -6 121 -144 78
-85 185 -111 148 -122 57
57 -244 101 -1 -148 52
51 -89 19 55 54

5000 *****
-47 -264 -49 68 16 79
-11 68 -52 -98 54 53

6000 *****
-48 -161 -58 79 -117 -78
54 65 48 5 53 52

```

Designer

```

1000 *****
-45 -158 -48 199 74 35
243 -358 6 52 -147 95
113 -91 39 53 52

2000 *****
-44 -154 -46 178 153 -55
119 -15 121 12 37 56

3000 *****
-45 -242 -47 -22 2 157
-56 126 154 -59 134 84
-82 63 -74 -71 58 49

4000 *****
-46 -262 -48 -127 -180 -139
-128 -149 -119 -146 -105 -123
148 149 35 -111 -48 -43
51 -882 -458 -417 -343 -449
-432 -185 53 -92 48 47

5000 *****
-47 -291 -49 -24 8 88
-241 -88 5 1 58 4
-74 -118 58 49 58

6000 *****
-48 -296 -58 -25 93 93
117 -25 94 85 85 -356
-75 9 6 52 89 -88
-128 44 54

7000 *****
-49 -257 -51 -26 92 92
95 -39 51 58 -31 -32
-126 -127 -35 -36 -37 77
-364 -83 11 9 55 -33
-77 51 -86 46 45

8000 *****
-8 -166 -18 -58 113 71
-38 47 -31 3 77 76
-19 -22 51 -26 7 -18
-13 12 185 5 54 -22
18 45 42 42 39 39
47 47 44 54 58 7
47 46

9000 *****
-9 -129 -11 -4 61 179
89 -188 45 -1 58 49

10000 *****
-49 198 -47 88 -52 -186
98 -186 -185 92 -19 -111
48 -185 -184

11000 *****
-48 123 -46 -119 -156 -38
54 -18 -31 -23 -193 -152
-143 -84 -276 -168 -98 52
52 -185 -38 -111 36 21
-297 -148 49 -27 -184 61
-39 -112 -99 -74 21 -158
-288 -186 -58 -78 -56 -189
-188

12000 *****
-47 199 -45 -248 129 132
-187 37 38 36 13 -24
25 -183 -182

13000 *****
-46 194 -44 -117 -211 -126
-288 16 23 -72 -248 -161
38 49 49 -119 -18 25
-97 -96

```

```

14000 *****
-45 113 -43 -116 -238 -298
-124 -178 -49 -229 -161 41
49 49 -119 -18 -57 -97
-96

```

3-D Graph

```

1000 *****
43 91 -45 429 78 -144
187 39 -63 -182 88 -241
-4 -22 -8 -11 84 196
188 66 79 12 -82 -128
-282 144 -97 3 -9 58
68

2000 *****
-44 -139 -46 -196 85 -13
-59 -22 -16 -66 -14 9
4 -59 -56 32 51 58

3000 *****
-45 -169 -47 -81 29 28
49 48

4000 *****
-46 -141 -48 118 174 -6
3 -8 -184 275 136 137
98 -98 89 111 -43 34
-183 -9 56 35 54

5000 *****
-47 -28 -49 58 -46 11
47 -186 -43 44 -268 -68
-62 -64 -66 49 85 21
46 -187 -38 54 27 15
51 75 -23 48 -5 -42
56 2 -37 53 -2 -68
58 -6 -71

Screen
1000 *****
-45 -193 -45 28 124 -124
-35 55 13 123 -26 59
68

2000 *****
-44 -141 -46 114 43 -183
28 49 48

3000 *****
-45 -239 -47 287 -11 -93
-78 48 47

4000 *****
-46 -156 -48 159 133 84
-46 9 -118 18 55 54

10000 *****
-49 142 -47 -68 -186 -65
-27 -188 -99

11000 *****
-48 149 -46 -213 -185 -71
1 -61 58 -17 -187 -186

12000 *****
-47 116 -45 -668 -212 -222
51 -51 -48 93 -88 366
26 -132 -98 -49 238 288
-75 -51

Characters
10000 *****
-49 88 -47 -265 25 13
-54 -36 -39 -83 -188 -187

```

```

11000 *****
-48 184 -46 -223 -256 -32
-65 -99 -98

12000 *****
-47 98 -45 3 -13 -334
-288 -155 388 54 -158 -162
8 -183 -269 58 58 -18
-376 -183 -192 -143 -48 -37
51 -39 -55 -88 -99 -98

13000 *****
-46 81 -44 12 -288 -134
-38 -15 -45 -98 21 -338
-164 -158 -144 -143 -288 -174
-228 -177 -181 -87 -68 -84
-5 -164 -119 -156 286 -127
-48 -67 -91 -88 -63 48
-148 439 -183 77 -148 436
-118 -145 -183 -44 -38 -69
-26 -86 -49 -151 -48 2
13 -186 -3 -75 -283 -62
-188 -189 -188

14000 *****
-45 97 -43 -19 -285 185
-174 187 -172 -92 -154 14
-88 -146 -75 -99 -98

15000 *****
-44 76 -42 -156 -156 187
-198 332 -181 58 47 -284
-98 -188 -99

16000 *****
-43 185 -41 -155 -155 -388
56 56 -62 -92 -182

17000 *****
-42 111 -48 -154 -154 188
-255 -42 -254 -95 58 58
-18 -62 -97 -96

18000 *****
-41 183 -39 -137 -152 -152
181 62 -95 61 58 -46
-17 -98 -96 -95

19000 *****
-40 148 -38 -136 -151 -151
182 63 -94 62 51 -45
-16 -33 -95 -94

20000 *****
-38 237 -48 -146 -161 -161
-24 6 -184 52 41 -55
-26 64 -185 -184

21000 *****
-49 93 -47 -161 -58 -168
194 51 -97 52 -83 -187
-186

22000 *****
-48 172 -46 -119 -213 -128
-286 14 -144 26 -187 -186

23000 *****
-47 111 -45 -118 -232 -292
-126 -126 -56 28 18

24000 *****
-46 86 -44 -66 -162 -17
-47 -219 -24 55 -98

Sound Demo
1000 *****
-1 -141 -3 -68 45 -64
-65 47 281 339 -159 185
72 86 -14 -116 -117 97
189 14 19 -25 286 -62
82 48 -25 73 -385 42

```



```

129 83 -101 -17 -6 -105
-63 -65 -95 -56 56 -101
27 -184 23 -187 89 -110
100 -102 126 -105 190 -100
40 -111 -18 26 6 39
61 68

2000 *****
-44 -199 -46 66 330 -17
-109 270 450 40 -23 56
55

Music *****
1000 *****
-43 -153 -45 5 106 -74
36 58 49

2000 *****
-2 -154 -4 195 77 114
163 -5 -103 -103 22 56
55

3000 *****
-3 -257 -5 70 91 20
51 71 -75 -50 106 55
54 -146 166 -76 76 -2
111 51 130 -84 130 50
-154 -111 75 54 -35 -16
62 -27 -1 59 -356 1
56 -33 -3 53 -25 4
61 -20 0 50 -31 -4
55 -34 -24 63 -344 -13
100 59 54 53 -97 100
104 -90 160 81 61 56
55 -220 -87 -11 -75 61
68

4000 *****
-4 -144 -6 98 -44 -75
52 191 -130 -27 51 -68
-97 46 51 50

5000 *****
-5 -22 -7 -34 -33 -26
47 46

6000 *****
-6 84 -8 36 23 32
20 47 47 17 48

Unifile *****
1000 *****
-49 -39 -47 -308 -264 -151
-204 300 -56 -47 -176 -193
-54 -187 -219 -229 200 -68
-167 51 -260 -66 -160 -162
-6 -100 -107 -102 -101

11000 *****
-40 -46 -46 112 -520 -262
-200 -75 133 -175 -201 -130
-104 -256 -109 -120 -120 -104
-102 206 179 107 30 -123
-116 -45 -77 53 -102 -101

12000 *****
-47 207 -45 -21 00 -84
-115 -62 -104 -222 -135 -242
72 -40 -44 336 -190 -102
-89 -377 -372 -386 -476 46
-109 177 21 -122 -78 -76
29 -107 -106

13000 *****
-46 177 -44 -211 -150 -194
19 -110 -259 -99 10 -123
-26 -106 49 -47 29 -90

```

```

14000 *****
-45 127 -43 26 -153 106
-159 -45 -111 -90 -53 -252
-106 -211 -147 -66 -90 -97

15000 *****
-44 191 -42 -119 -114 113
-163 121 -20 -97 33 -100
-595 36 -26 -179 -04 -135
-169 -163 -36 -107 93 7
-127 -300 -110 10 -60 90
-109 46 -29 -201 -105 -5
-132 109 -113 -1 -134 -231
-74 -303 57 -301 -05 51
-305 -399 -259 -161 -134 -32
200 262 -110 -2 -103 262
-129 -174 -110 -5 -60 33
16 -101 -100

16000 *****
-43 179 -41 -27 -125 -222
-111 1 -84 -372 57 -301
-26 -31 -260 197 165 -146
-100 256 200 20 -73 -207
-40 65 -101 -01 -107 56
-74 -100 -10 -170 5 -99
-90

17000 *****
-42 129 -40 67 -299 260
-40 -93 -92

18000 *****
-41 -214 -39 -98 -170 111
79 -92 -91

19000 *****
-40 -69 -30 -60 -194 61
-36 -91 -90

20000 *****
-50 190 -40 -121 -215 -130
-200 12 19 19 68 -122
-42 44 -109 13 65 -117
-37 50 -114 -12 -23 -159
-232 -117 -195 47 -405 -134
39 -129 14 -100 -107

21000 *****
-49 109 -47 -120 -372 -233
-293 -127 -101 -44 -6 -109
-147 -194 46 -107 -40 1
-101 -90 -190 42 -111 -6
-17 -153 52 -220 -203 50
-413 -91 42 -126 -65 -105
-104

```

Nnumber

```

10000 *****
-49 -39 -47 -126 -300 -103
-3 245 -61 -47 -190 -112
-107

11000 *****
-40 -46 -46 -22 -110 -139
-96 -323 -52 -415 -229 -161
-50 -25 -97 -90 -10 -116
-95 140 -134 -43 -110 -17
-220 -204 -107 -119 -205 -229
-202 -47 -23 -79 -83 -120
19 -214 -30 -22 -50 -109
-100

12000 *****
-47 109 -45 -102 -236 -61
-60 -90 -97

```

```

13000 *****
-46 207 -44 -16 -116 35
-145 -25 -27 -194 -131 -16
-107 -49 -220 -00 -11 -102
-141 140 -256 -131 -16 -107
-106 -37 -112 03 246 -62
-390 1 -114 -100 -77 34
-101 -100

14000 *****
-45 232 -41 -25 -115 -163
-207 -09 -276 -193 -00 -129
-325 49 -177 102 -124 -101
64 -95 -105

15000 *****
-44 210 -42 100 -114 39
96 10 -8 -119 -129 -20
-105 81 -120 -95 -94 -110
-179 -110 -202 112 20 -145
-54 -100 42 40 -96 -95

16000 *****
-43 202 -41 -41 -52 -22
-99 0 -143 -107 -2 -122
-41 -103 4 -116 -19 -99
56 71 25 -102 -101

17000 *****
-42 113 -40 99 -141 -06
-83 -92 50 -95 -09 -90
-102 -68 -97 96

18000 *****
-41 237 -39 -51 01 -110
-15 -119 -205 63 -271 196
-51 -1 -100 -74 -116 -199
-233 103 49 -00 -67 -41
02 -100 -92 -90 -76 07
-106 56 -144 -103 56 -216
-37 -10 -90 24 50 -102
-101

19000 *****
-40 129 -30 -134 -03 -00
-09 59 -97 -37 -99 -90

20000 *****
-50 110 -40 -145 -19 -62
-110 37 -146 -169 -55 -215
-149 -3 -171 -151 -222 -64
245 -12 -114 -37 -4 -170
-110 197 -277 -20 -25 -98
39 -117 -60 -112 40 -47
-79 -53 -103 -102
45 -100 -122 21 -101 -100

21000 *****
-49 191 -47 -120 -214 -129
-207 15 20 -151 -144 -92
-233 -2 -160 -146 49 49
-25 -209 -38 -172 -102 45
45 -100 -122 21 -101 -100

22000 *****
-40 110 -46 -119 -233 -293
-127 -101 -140 -130 -09 -233
1 -160 -145 49 49 -25
-209 -24 -172 -113 45 45
-109 -122 -61 -101 -100

```

MultiQ

```

10000 *****
-49 -39 -47 -29 -160 -392
-262 09 245 -55 -57 02
-122 -196 40 -210 -160 106
30 -22 -175 -64 -65 -169
-109 -104 -103

```

```

11000 *****
-40 -46 -46 112 -379 -262
-102 -75 133 00 -106 -170
-234 -201 -130 -101 -126 -106
-63 -117 -112 -110 190 210
03 202 209 194 41 -115
-50 -40 -00 50 -105 -104

12000 *****
-47 217 -45 -21 -117 -137
-86 -70 -111 54 25 -91
-90 -29 -106 -212 196 97
-171 -256 -05 41 -105 -104

13000 *****
-46 200 -44 -20 -116 -64
-46 -109 -93 -21 -109 -105
-100 -111 -203 -106 5 -70
-111 54 -60 -112 97 -23
-68 243 -109 -7 35 -46
-111 -04 32 -104 -103

14000 *****
-45 93 -43 -43 -54 -24
-101 6 -145 -109 20 -124
-43 -105 34 -110 -21 -101
54 101 23 -104 -103

15000 *****
-44 106 -42 97 -143 -00
-05 55 -90 -05 -125 -111
-66 -67 -99 -90

16000 *****
-43 123 -41 -51 -152 33
-40 56 -44 -92 -102

17000 *****
-42 210 -40 -115 -114 -10
-295 231 -155 31 0 -0
-10 -63 -113 -416 -41 -154
-94 50 07 -233 45 31
-103 -113 93 -61 -156 -04
-97 297 -256 -49 147 -14
-176 -307 -175 -90 -205 -37
116 50 -70 36 -90 -97

18000 *****
-41 125 -39 -270 -6 -3
-25 -76 -90 -67 -127 -130
-102 -101 -154 92 -154 -65
2 -95 -6 224 47 -102
25 253 25 -99 65 -90 72
-106 49 -51 -99 -90

19000 *****
-40 217 -30 -111 -137 01
-230 -05 -16 -93 -164 -09
-317 -560 249 -155 -146 -96
49 -90 -100

20000 *****
-50 05 -40 -60 72 -119
-24 -120 -214 -390 -322
-60 -10 -84 -126 -209 -243
61 -14 -90 -77 -51 72
-110 -70 100 03 77 -105
11 -197 -50 -31 -111 11
56 -104 -103

21000 *****
-49 120 -47 -111 -142 -91
-00 50 106 -63 -56 -107

22000 *****
-40 192 -46 -119 -213 -120
-206 14 21 -02 -170 -103
-161 -211 40 -230 -76 51
51 -153 -66 43 -125 10
-104 -103

```

20000 *****
 -47 111 -45 -118 -232 -292
 -156 -108 -79 -157 -108 -164
 -280 40 -238 -141 51 51
 -153 -52 43 -125 -64

Banker

1000 *****
 -1 -11 -3 337 214 111
 27 89 49 84 178 -49
 -94 -2 -382 -16 52 51

2000 *****
 -2 -4 -4 -28 335 67
 -28 77 98 197 11 185
 50 83 124 25 58 44
 69 52 61 -201 -138 -219
 -239 -118 25 29 66 -77
 87 -6 229 -4 55 54

3000 *****
 -3 -291 -5 -46 67 -29
 -24 -12 56 54 -15 54
 78 -28 61 -51 24 -24
 -3 -63 61 -51 24 -24
 -146 164 -22 -62 -35 108
 7 118 68 -18 180 -97
 -21 -35 164 -38 16 62
 -93 -114 -68 -252 -181 46
 14 57 -21 1 17 69
 -147 -5 -38 57 63 28
 -188 -183 166 -125 35 65
 -116 54 55

4000 *****
 -4 -139 -6 92 -165 65
 146 75 6 147 54 168
 54 9 55 -188 37 148
 -27 42 34 153 273 175
 6 -276 -133 -23 -56 96
 61 -125 -4 -182 35 52
 51

5000 *****
 -5 -176 -7 218 72 29
 -182 -185 -185 51 8 53
 52

6000 *****
 -6 -228 -8 461 111 -37
 31 28 -7 -16 29 56
 -138 81 56 31 -83 62
 -56 88 -13 137 158 15
 58 53 -182 -72 58 -53
 -122 55 -66 -169 46 -216
 -118 68 -73 156 -32 29
 36 163 -67 51 -127 86
 -71 -91 61 -94 35 -12
 -116 46 -54 58 49

7000 *****
 -7 -127 -9 -41 -45 -58
 -6 -29 47 46 -36 -41
 86 -2 129 51 58 31
 46 43

8000 *****
 -8 76 -18 235 129 122
 122 217 -3 -189 112 181
 48 227 -58 66 61 5
 43 42

9000 *****
 -9 -249 -11 62 156 71
 149 -71 -78 51 148 119
 97 79 -36 -74 -186 62
 -81 41 51

10000 *****
 -49 189 -47 -128 -234 -294
 -128 -182 -187 -196 -175 -153
 -138 -20 15 47 -121 22
 -188 -99

Accountant

1000 *****
 -1 -11 -3 332 214 88
 -138 -386 49 48
 2000 *****

-2 -4 -4 -33 338 67
 -38 128 61 125 -24 -162
 77 12 148 85 -32 -179
 36 67 52 61 59 12
 -98 -95 -236 -84 78 -71
 65 166 -18 33 32 58
 57

3000 *****
 -3 -152 -5 -137 -54 -51
 181 -82 54 -18 21 23
 54 53

4000 *****
 -4 -245 -6 -39 66 13
 29 -128 -59 99 -62 38
 182 -28 -11 48 48 25
 28 15 -68 55 54

5000 *****
 -5 -172 -7 -43 -33 249
 51 151 -77 -118 48 -21
 56 -31 114 -2 187 -14
 51 181 137 64 4 53
 52

6000 *****
 -6 -158 -8 -148 168 48
 78 -126 -5 -171 47 -22
 129 61 146 -134 -168 -84
 118 186 55 32 -98 95
 153 58 21 47 46

7000 *****
 -7 -142 -9 88 -168 62
 326 78 189 -89 -138 -49
 33 88 52 3 324 -93
 188 54 153 121 182 199
 3 -279 -136 -28 -99 93
 58 -188 -7 -249 251 139
 -362 -49 58 49 141 -182
 35 52 51

8000 *****
 -8 -179 -18 -198 -81 -41
 -37 128 -9 -48 35 23
 33 67 -26 -3 -187 97
 41 62 -2 51 58

9000 *****
 -9 -151 -11 62 -71 139
 158 -258 -312 224 -258 -166
 59 75 -258 187 -242 47
 -286 105 79 83 4 52
 41 -184 87 38 76 63
 159 -168 65 53 -182 -22
 -64 -6 -99 47 -6 -139
 -116 -28 -214 42 -88 46
 45

10000 *****
 -49 89 -47 -292 -186 -179
 -179 -274 -54 52 -169 -158
 -185 -284 -119 45 -63 -181
 -188

11000 *****
 -48 192 -46 -119 -213 -128
 -286 14 21 -178 -185 -228
 -225 -158 47 -48 -128 23
 -99 -98

12000 *****
 -47 111 -45 -118 -232 -292
 -126 -108 -178 -91 -228 -222
 -155 47 -48 -128 -99

Budget

10000 *****
 -49 -39 -47 -514 -288 -171
 -226 -239 -246 -242 -153 -151
 -192 -148 -182 -68 -122 -213
 -16 -158 41 57 381 -63
 -54 85 285 -291 29 46
 -185 -42 -66 -111 -37 -185
 -184

11000 *****
 -48 -46 -46 -22 -148 -117
 -195 37 -288 -126 -128 -88
 -139 3 -49 -248 -31 -282
 -48 -174 -112 -216 -175 -96
 -159 252 224 144 148 193
 278 226 189 66 -124 192
 -253 -45 -77 -81 -182 -181
 -184

12000 *****
 -47 226 -45 -118 -291 89
 -165 -287 33 -177 58 -185
 -155 232 -287 -175 -381 -252
 17 33 -223 294 -149 -481
 -147 -161 228 -144 53 71
 -287 -287 -335 -148 -138 296
 -281 -15 56 -99 -189

13000 *****
 -46 69 -44 -175 38 26
 -187 -278 -132 -112 -66 8
 -234 -159 29 -68 -88 -74
 -289 -287 -71 -72 -77 47
 -338 -144 -126 -181 -98 -97
 -186 -185

14000 *****
 -45 121 -43 -429 61 -9
 -117 -185 -182 146 -217 -296
 49 -143 -178 -183 52 -122
 -72 -185 -198 137 -216 -186
 58 -1 -165 -122 53 -47
 -186 -185

15000 *****
 -44 169 -42 -25 -151 -117
 -188 -288 168 58 47 -214
 -185 -184 3 6 -181 54
 -99 2 -184 -183

16000 *****
 -43 116 -41 92 -113 275
 185 -18 -319 318 -67 92
 184 8 -61 123 -122 -99
 -118 52 -128 -84 -263 58
 -213 -183 34 -54 -95 -94

17000 *****
 -42 245 -48 -113 -192 94
 -325 28 38 -98 93 285
 -125 24 -181 83 -159 -118
 -189 -422 -112 -547 -31 52
 -68 -112 54 -43 -89 -58
 -68 -114 69 -188 -99

18000 *****
 -41 281 -39 -112 -153 -61
 -285 -9 -76 48 -9 -72
 147 28 -98 -95

19000 *****
 -48 88 -38 -161 -121 162
 -188 -181 -148 -114 57 8
 -115 -188 55 -123 -93 -92

20000 *****
 -58 84 -48 -121 -234 15
 -127 -81 6 -76 -113 -165
 -1 -82 -187 46 -86 -182
 -181

21000 *****
 -49 122 -47 -128 -126 49
 -138 155 -182 -163 -185 -221
 -183 47 47 -68 -48 -181
 -188

22000 *****
 -48 188 -46 -138 -88 -188
 -41 -127 92 -181 41 36
 -131 -38 -288 -69 -181 -188

23000 *****
 -47 228 -45 -224 -117 -381
 -196 -155 -185 54 27 53
 -184 -183

24000 *****
 -46 88 -44 -289 -198 -176
 -173 -271 -51 55 117 -256
 -146 -82 -181 -188

25000 *****
 -45 283 -43 -198 -235 -243
 96 49 95 249 -112 -122
 -76 -181 173 28 -228 29
 -193 -114 -19 -184 199 -288
 -129 -143 29 -98 -97

26000 *****
 -44 176 -42 -115 -289 -124
 -282 18 25 -322 -166 -24
 128 -97 -129 -212 -269 56
 56 -287 -195 -195 49 -185
 58 -118 25 -97 -96

27000 *****
 -43 115 -41 -114 -228 -288
 -122 -176 -125 -155 -21 138
 -97 -126 -212 -266 56
 -287 -181 -192 49 -185 58
 -118 -63 -56 -96 -95

28000 *****
 -43 -95 -45 478 93 119
 -168 85 119 -212 53 -19
 43 4 92 289 88 55
 384 263 83 63 57 56
 -157 45 98 98 -21 75
 128 63 -197 -96 56 55
 187 38 52 51

29000 *****
 -44 243 -46 -283 172 91
 54 -78 -79 187 166 139
 95 93 57 -92 51 58

30000 *****
 -45 229 -47 4 112 -143
 -159 94 -4 98 68 59
 -96 -56

31000 *****
 -46 228 -48 -113 -192 94
 -325 28 38 -98 93 285
 -125 24 -181 83 -159 -118
 -189 -422 -112 -547 -31 52
 -68 -112 54 -43 -89 -58
 -68 -114 69 -188 -99

32000 *****
 -47 111 -45 -118 -232 -292
 -126 -108 -178 -91 -228 -222
 -155 47 -48 -128 -99

33000 *****
 -48 192 -46 -119 -213 -128
 -286 14 21 -178 -185 -228
 -225 -158 47 -48 -128 23
 -99 -98

INDEX

&		Designer	41
&&	69, 76	Directory	56
A		E	
Accountant	158	ENTER	24
ADATE	6	Event	33
Anaclock	1	EXIT	13
B		F	
Banker	145	Field	99, 116
BEEP	32, 87, 95	FILL	11, 18
Binary	69, 72, 84	Formatting a number	151
Binary search	106, 112, 126	G	
Budget	171	GOTO	12, 13
C		I	
Channel	154	Indicator characters	162
Character memory	72, 73	Initialisation	3, 42
Characters	71	INKEY\$	23
Checksum Generator	194	INPUT	24
Circle defining	7	Inserting into arrays	109, 147, 161
CIRCLE command	47	INSTR	94, 113
Clock	14	Internal clock	6
CLOSE	55	Inverting characters	81
Command lines	12	L	
Control module	12	LBYTES	85
CSIZE	80	Loading data from microdrive	55
D		M	
DATA	61, 91, 92	Menu	24
DATE	6	MERGE	39
DATES	5, 6, 9, 21		
Deleting items from arrays	115, 167		

Microdrive	3	S	
Mirroring a character	82	Saving the program	2
Mode	12, 13, 15, 71	SBYTES	85
Modular programming	12	SCALE	53
Multiq	129	Scientific notation	150, 151
Music	90	Screen	63
		Screen memory	64
N		Screen protection	32
Negative numbers	152	SCR__	154
Nnumber	117	SDATE	21
Note values	91	SER1	38, 154
		Setting the time	5, 21, 34
O		Shifting a character left	83
OPEN__IN	56	Sound Demo	87
OPEN__NEW	55	Storing data on microdrive	54
OVER	43, 46, 176	String array	20
		String comparison	100
P		T	
PEEK__L	75	TAB	176
Pixel	71	3D Graph	56
Pixel colours	65	Timer	19
Pixels		Transferring the character set	74
spacing of	16	Turning a character	83
Pointer array	103	Turtle graphics	56
Printer	35, 63, 66, 67, 154		
Procedures	4	U	
passing parameters to	11	UNDER	155
Program format	x	Unifile	98
		User defined cursor	43, 77
R		W	
RAD	8, 47	WINDOW	80
RAM	73		
RECOL	71		
Record	99		
REPEAT	5, 13		
RESPR	75, 86		
RESTORE	61		
RETRY	6		
ROM	73		
Rotation of a shape	47		
Rounding errors	151		
RS232C	38		

Other titles from Sunshine

SPECTRUM BOOKS

Artificial Intelligence on the Spectrum Computer

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 37 8 £6.95

Spectrum Adventures

Tony Bridge & Roy Carnell ISBN 0 946408 07 6 £5.95

Machine Code Sprites and Graphics for the ZX Spectrum

John Durst ISBN 0 946408 51 3 £6.95

ZX Spectrum Astronomy

Maurice Gavin ISBN 0 946408 24 6 £6.95

Spectrum Machine Code Applications

David Laine ISBN 0 946408 17 3 £6.95

The Working Spectrum

David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 00 9 £5.95

Inside Your Spectrum

Jeff Naylor & Diane Rogers ISBN 0 946408 35 1 £6.95

Master your ZX Microdrive

Andrew Pennell ISBN 0 946408 19 X £6.95

COMMODORE 64 BOOKS

Graphic Art for the Commodore 64

Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 15 7 £5.95

DIY Robotics and Sensors on the Commodore Computer

John Billingsley ISBN 0 946408 30 0 £6.95

Artificial Intelligence on the Commodore 64

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 29 7 £6.95

Simulation Techniques on the Commodore 64

John Cochrane ISBN 0 946408 58 0 £6.95

Machine Code Graphics and Sound for the Commodore 64

Mark England & David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 28 9 £6.95

Commodore 64 Adventures

Mike Grace ISBN 0 946408 11 4 £5.95

Business Applications for the Commodore 64

James Hall ISBN 0 946408 12 2 £5.95

Mathematics on the Commodore 64

Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 14 9 £5.95

Advanced Programming Techniques on the Commodore 64

David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 23 8 £5.95

Commodore 64 Disk Companion

David Lawrence & Mark England ISBN 0 946408 49 1 £7.95

The Working Commodore 64

David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 02 5 £5.95

Commodore 64 Machine Code Master

David Lawrence & Mark England ISBN 0 946408 05 X £6.95

Machine Code Games Routines for the Commodore 64

Paul Roper ISBN 0 946408 47 5 £6.95

Programming for Education on the Commodore 64

John Scriven & Patrick Hall ISBN 0 946408 27 0 £5.95

Writing Strategy Games on your Commodore 64

John White ISBN 0 946408 54 8 £6.95

ELECTRON BOOKS**Graphic Art for the Electron Computer**

Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 20 3 £5.95

The Working Electron

John Scriven ISBN 0 946408 52 1 £5.95

Programming for Education on the Electron Computer

John Scriven & Patrick Hall ISBN 0 946408 21 1 £5.95

BBC COMPUTER BOOKS**Functional Forth for the BBC Computer**

Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 04 1 £5.95

Graphic Art for the BBC Computer

Boris Allan ISBN 0 946408 08 4 £5.95

DIY Robotics and Sensors for the BBC Computer

John Billingsley ISBN 0 946408 13 0 £6.95

Artificial Intelligence on the BBC and Electron

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 36 X £6.95

Essential Maths on the BBC and Electron Computer

Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 34 3 £5.95

Programming for Education on the BBC Computer

John Scriven & Patrick Hall ISBN 0 946408 10 6 £5.95

Making Music on the BBC Computer

Ian Waugh ISBN 0 946408 26 2 £5.95

DRAGON BOOKS**Advanced Sound & Graphics for the Dragon**

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 06 8 £5.95

Artificial Intelligence on the Dragon Computer

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 33 5 £6.95

Dragon 32 Games Master

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 03 3 £5.95

The Working Dragon

David Lawrence ISBN 0 946408 01 7 £5.95

The Dragon Trainer

Brian Lloyd ISBN 0 946408 09 2 £5.95

ATARI BOOKS**Atari Adventures**

Tony Bridge ISBN 0 946408 18 1 £5.95

Writing Strategy Games on your Atari Computer

John White ISBN 0 946408 22 X £5.95

SINCLAIR QL BOOKS**Artificial Intelligence on the Sinclair QL**

Keith & Steven Brain ISBN 0 946408 41 6 £6.95

Introduction to Simulation Techniques on the Sinclair QL

John Cochrane ISBN 0 946408 45 9 £6.95

Developing Applications for the Sinclair QL

Mike Grace ISBN 0 946408 63 7 £6.95

Mathematics on the Sinclair QL

Czes Kosniowski ISBN 0 946408 43 2 £6.95

Quill, Easel, Archive and Abacus on the Sinclair QL

Alison McCallum-Varey ISBN 0 946408 55 6 £6.95

Inside the Sinclair QL

Jeff Naylor & Diane Rogers ISBN 0 946408 40 8 £6.95

GENERAL BOOKS**Home Applications on your Micro**

Mike Grace ISBN 0 946408 50 5 £6.95

Sunshine also publishes

POPULAR COMPUTING WEEKLY

The first weekly magazine for home computer users. Each copy contains Top 10 charts of the best-selling software and books and up-to-the-minute details of the latest games. Other features in the magazine include regular hardware and software reviews, programming hints, computer swap, adventure corner and pages of listings for the Spectrum, Dragon, BBC, VIC 20 and 64, ZX 81 and other popular micros. Only 40p a week, a year's subscription costs £19.95 (£9.98 for six months) in the UK and £37.40 (£18.70 for six months) overseas.

DRAGON USER

The monthly magazine for all users of Dragon microcomputers. Each issue contains reviews of software and peripherals, programming advice for beginners and advanced users, program listings, a technical advisory service and all the latest news related to the Dragon. A year's subscription (12 issues) costs £10 in the UK and £16 overseas.

MICRO ADVENTURER

The monthly magazine for everyone interested in Adventure games, war gaming and simulation/role-playing games. Includes reviews of all the latest software, lists of all the software available and programming advice. A year's subscription (12 issues) costs £10 in the UK and £16 overseas.

COMMODORE HORIZONS

The monthly magazine for all users of Commodore computers. Each issue contains reviews of software and peripherals, programming advice for beginners and advanced users, program listings, a technical advisory service and all the latest news. A year's subscription costs £10 in the UK and £16 overseas.

For further information contact:

Sunshine
12-13 Little Newport Street
London WC2R 3LD
01-437 4343

Telex: 296275

NOTES

NOTES

NOTES